Danaher Motion SERVO**STAR<sup>®</sup> SC** 

# **Installation Manual**

## **KOLLMORGEN**

giving our customers freedom of design

Publication Number: KOL-1295 M-SS-006-0105 Firmware Version 2.1.7

## **Record of Manual Revisions**

Issue No.	Date	Brief Description of Revision
0	08/16/00	Preliminary Issue
1	09/08/00	Initial release of hardware
2	02/21/01	Corrected errors, reformatted text
3	06/31/01	Corrected wiring information, added appendix C & D, added samples
4	02/28/02	Added MotionSuite information and Windows 2000 setup information
5	09/30/02	Corrected Electrical Specifications

## **Copyright Information**

Original printing, 2000, 2002. ©Copyright Danaher Motion Kollmorgen - All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America.

### NOTICE:

Not for use or disclosure outside of Danaher Motion Kollmorgen except under written agreement. All rights are reserved. No part of this book shall be reproduced, stored in retrieval form, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the written permission from the publisher. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of the book, the publisher assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

This document is proprietary information of Danaher Motion Kollmorgen that is furnished for customer use ONLY. Other uses are unauthorized without written permission of Danaher Motion Kollmorgen. Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Danaher Motion Kollmorgen. Therefore, information contained in this manual may be updated from time-to-time due to product improvements, etc., and may not conform in every respect to former issues.

VGA<sup>®</sup> and PC-AT<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation Windows<sup>®</sup> is a register trademark of Microsoft Corporation EnDat<sup>TM</sup> is a trademark of Dr. Johannes Heidenhain GmbH Kollmorgen **GOLD**LINE<sup>®</sup>, **MOTIONEERING<sup>®</sup>**, **MOTIONLINK<sup>®</sup>**, **PLATINUM<sup>®</sup>** and SERVOSTAR<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Danaher Motion Kollmorgen.

# **Safety Instructions**

Only qualified personnel are permitted to transport, assemble, commission, and maintain this equipment. Properly qualified personnel are persons who are familiar with the transport, assembly, installation, commissioning and operation of motors, and who have the appropriate qualifications for their jobs. The qualified personnel must know and observe the following standards and regulations:

IEC 364 resp. CENELEC HD 384 or DIN VDE 0100

IEC report 664 or DIN VDE 0110

National regulations for safety and accident prevention or VBG 4

Read all available documentation before assembling and using. Incorrect handling of products in this manual can result in injury and damage to persons and machinery. Strictly adhere to the technical information regarding installation requirements.

It is vital to ensure that all system components are connected to earth ground. Electrical safety is provided through a low-resistance earth connection.

The SERVOSTAR SC product contains electrostatically sensitive components that can be damaged by incorrect handling. Avoid contact with high insulating materials (artificial fabrics, plastic film, etc.). Place the product on a conductive surface. Ground yourself (discharge any possible static electricity build-up) by touching an unpainted, metal, grounded surface before touching the equipment.

Keep all covers and cabinet doors shut during operation. Otherwise, potential hazards could cause severe personal injury or damage to the product.

Be aware that during operation, the product has electrically charged components and hot surfaces. Control and power cables can carry a high voltage, even when the motor is not rotating.

Never disconnect or connect the product while the power source is energized to avoid electric arcing and hazards to personnel and electrical contacts.

After removing the power source from the equipment, wait at least 10 minutes before touching or disconnecting sections of the equipment that normally carry electrical charges (e.g., capacitors, contacts, screw connections). To be safe, measure the electrical contact points with a meter before touching the equipment.

These symbols indicate a potential for personal injury or equipment damage if the recommended precautions and safe operating practices are not followed. Read and be familiar with the safety notices in this manual before attempting installation, operation, or maintenance to avoid serious bodily injury, damage to the equipment, or operational difficulty.



A Warning identifies hazards that could result in personal injury or death

A **Caution** identifies hazards that could result in personal injury or equipment damage.



A Note identifies information critical to the user's understanding or use of the equipment.

## **Directives and Standards**

The SERVOSTAR SC product series has been successfully tested and evaluated to meet UL/cUL 508C for U. S. and Canadian markets. This standard outlines the minimum requirements for electrically operated power conversion equipment (frequency converters and servo amplifiers), which are intended to eliminate the risk of fire, electric shock, or injury to persons, being caused by such equipment.

## Mark Conformance

Servo drives are incorporated in electrical plants and machines for industrial use. When the servo drives are built into machines or plants, the operation of the drive is prohibited until the machine or plant meets the requirements of the EC Directive on Machines 89/392/EEC and the EC Directive on EMC (89/336/EEC). EN 60204 and EN 292 must also be met.

In connection with the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC, the harmonized standards of the EN 50178 series are applied to the amplifiers, together with EN 60439-1, EN 60146 and EN 60204.

The manufacturer of the machine or plant is responsible for ensuring that they meet the limits; which are required by the EMC regulations. Advice on the correct installation for EMC - such as shielding, grounding, arrangement of filters, treatment of connectors and the lay out of cabling can be found in this documentation.

Conformance with the EC Directive on EMC 89/336/EEC and the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC is mandatory for the supply of servo drives within the European Community.

The servo drives have been tested by an authorized testing laboratory in a defined configuration with the system components; described in this documentation. Danaher Motion Kollmorgen is not responsible for any divergence from the configuration and installation described in this documentation and is not responsible for the performance of new measurements or ensuring that regulatory requirements are met.

Danaher Motion Kollmorgen's SERVOSTAR products and systems have been successfully tested and evaluated to the limits and requirements of the EC Directive on EMC (89/336/EEC) and the EC Directive on Low Voltage (72/73/EEC). The product lines have been evaluated to EN50178 and EN60204 as a component of a machine and other relevant standards.

The Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) of a system is identified in two parts: emissions and immunity. Emissions are the generation of EMI (electromagnetic interference) and immunity is the susceptibility levels of the equipment. Limits are derived from generic standards EN55081-2 and EN55082-2 for heavy industrial environment. The SERVOSTAR series of drives and BUS Modules have been tested for radiated emissions, conducted emissions, EFT, ESD, surge, conducted immunity, and radiated immunity. These tests have been in accordance with EN55011, EN61000-4-2, ENV50140, IEC 1000-4-4, EN61000-4-5, and ENV50141.



Installation of the equipment is critical in designing system and machine electro-magnetic compatibility (EMC). The user must apply the installation recommendations in this manual. See the installation section and CE Filtering Techniques information when mounting and installing the drive system for CE conformance.

# Contents

READ BEFORE INSTALLING	7
UNPACKING AND INSPECTING	11
WARRANTY INFORMATION	
Use As Directed	
Part Number	
MOUNTING	
OUTLINE DIMENSIONS	13
HARDWARE SPECIFICATIONS	
WIRING THE SERVOSTAR SC	15
WIRING REQUIREMENTS	15
Grounding	15
Bonding	
Non-insulated Cable Clamp	
Alternative Bonding Methods.	
System Interconnect	
Electrical Specifications	
Regen Information	2
Control Specifications	2
SYSTEM WIRING DIAGRAM	6
Overview	
Power	7
Main Power	7
Logic Power	7
Power Diagram Notes	8
Encoder I/O	8
Communication	9
I/O Connectors	9
Digital Inputs	
Sourcing or Sinking	
Digital Outputs	
DIP Switch Settings	
Feedback	
Diagrams for GOLDLINE B & M Motors	
Diagrams for GOLDLINE XT & DDR Motors	
Feedback Devices	
Digital Encoder	
Cable Lengths	
Resolution and Accuracy	19

Resolver	
Cable Lengths	
Resolution and Accuracy	
Sine Encoder	
Cable Lengths	
Resolution and Accuracy	
Filtering	
CE Filtering Techniques	
Input Power Filtering	
Motor Line Filtering	
I/O Filtering	
Filter and Bonding Diagram	
SOFTWARE INSTALLATION	27
COMPUTER REOUIREMENTS	
INSTALLING BASIC MOVES DEVELOPMENT STUDIO	
INSTALLING MOTIONLINK	
INSTALLING MOTIONSUITE	
COMMUNICATION	
Installing Ethernet Communication Support	
BASIC Moves and <b>MOTIONLINK</b>	
MotionSuite	
Installing Serial Communication Support	
Windows NT	
Add Modem	
Edit Modem Properties	
Add Network Services	
Remote Access Service (RAS)	
Dial-Up Networking	
Windows95	
Add Modem	
Dialup Networking	
Windows98	
Add Modem	
Dialup Networking	40
Windows2000	41
Add Modem	41
Network Adapter and Protocol Installation	
Network and dial-up connections creation and configuration	
COMMUNICATION START UP	
BASIC Moves Development Studio and Ethernet	
BASIC Moves Development Studio and Serial Communication	
MOTIONLINK and Ethernet	
MOTIONLINK and Serial Communication	
MotionSuite	

Step by Step Startup	47
IP Pool Edit For Ethernet	47
SC Reference Manual	47
SC User's Manual	47
SC Install Manual	47
Motion Suite Help	47
About MotionSuite	47
MotionSuite and Ethernet Communication	
MotionSuite and Serial Communication	
SERVOSTAR SC SETUP	49
POWER-UP SEQUENCE	
ENABLING THE SYSTEM	
CONFIGURING THE DRIVE	
MOTIONLINK Startup Wizard	
Main MOTIONLINK Screen	
Command Generator	
Position	
Velocity	
Current	
Resolver Feedback	
Set Motor	
System I/O	55
Exit	
DUMB TERMINAL SUPPORT (C8 CONNECTOR)	
GENERATE PROGRAMS	
BASIC Moves	
MotionSuite's Program Development	
Main Screen	
Sending and Retrieving System Data	
Open Serial Port	
Change Communication Parameters	
Receive Data	
Examples	
Send Data	
Example	
Close Connection	
TUNING	59
PDFF COMPENSATION WITH PROPORTIONAL POSITION LOOP	
TUNING IN ZONES	59
Zone 1	
Zone 2	
Zone 3	61
GETTING STARTED PROGRAM	65

CONTROLLER OPERATION	
STATUS DISPLAY	
UNDERSTANDING CONMODES	
OPERATIONAL MODES	
System I/O	
Remote Enable Input (REMOTE)	
Configurable Inputs (IN1, IN2, IN3)	
Configurable Analog Outputs (ANOUT1 & ANOUT2, O1)	
Configurable Digital I/O (C9, C10, C11, C12, C14)	
Fault Output Relay (RELAY, RELAYMODE)	
Motor Thermostat Input (THERM, THERMODE)	
CORE PROCESSORS	71
CONTROL LOOPS	71
Servo Loop Description	
Current Loop	
Commutation Loop	
Velocity Loop	
Position Loop	
Torque Loop Operation	
Current Sampling	
Foldback	
Drive Foldback	74
Motor Foldback	74
TROUBLESHOOTING	75
Technical Information	
TROUBLESHOOTING TOOLS	
MOTIONLINK Diagnostic Tools	
BASIC Moves Development Studio Diagnostic Tools	
Most Common Problems and Solutions	
Error codes	
Fault Monitoring System	
Message Faults	
No Message Faults	
Error Handler (1 through 999)	
Built In Test (1000 through 1999)	
Run Time Sheduler (2000 through 2999)	
Motion (3000 through 3999)	
File System (4000 through 4999)	
Entry Station (5000 through 5999)	
Loader (6000 through 6999)	
Translator (7000 through 7999)	
Interpreter (8000 through 8999)	
Recorder (9000 through 9999)	
Event Handler (10000 through 10999)	

Backend Processor (11000 through 11999)	
Internal Communication (12000 through 12999)	
Root Process (16000 through 16999)	
Encapsulation (17000 through 17999)	
CUSTOMER SUPPORT	
APPENDIX A	
Motor Pinouts	
Motor Power Connections	
SC1R RESOLVER Connection	
SC1E Encoder Connection	
APPENDIX B	
BASIC Moves Development Studio	
MOTIONLINK	
MotionSuite	
COMMUNICATION	
Installing Ethernet Communication Support	
Using BASIC Moves and MOTIONLINK	
Using MotionSuite	
Example of Choosing an IP Address	
Installing Serial Communication Support	
Windows NT	
Add Modem	
Edit Modem Properties	
Add Network Services	
Remote Access Service (RAS)	
Dial-Up Networking	
Windows95	
Add Modem	
Dialup Networking	
Windows98	
Add Modem	
Dialup Networking	
Windows 2000	
Add Modem	
Network Adapter and Protocol Installation	
Network and dial-up connections creation and configuration	201
COMMUNICATION START UP	
BASIC Moves Development Studio and Ethernet	
BASIC Moves Development Studio and Serial Communication	
MOTIONLINK and Ethernet	
MOTIONLINK and Serial Communication	
Helpful Information About MotionSuite	
Step by Step Startup	
IP Pool Edit For Ethernet	

SC Reference Manual	
SC User's Manual	
SC Install Manual	
Motion Suite Help	
About MotionSuite	
Motion Suite and Ethernet Communication	
Motion Suite and Serial Communication	
MOTIONLINK STARTUP WIZARD	
MAIN MOTIONLINK SCREEN	
Command Generator	
Position	
Velocity	
Current	
Resolver Feedback	
Set Motor	
System I/O	
APPENDIX C	
DIFFERENTIAL INPUT	
APPENDIX D	
LOCAL VARIABLE MEMORY MANAGEMENT	
Stack Overflow	
Function Stack Overflow	
Local Variables Include	
LOCAL VARIABLE STORAGE IN THE TRANSLATOR	
DECLARED VARIABLES (DIM)	
PARAMETERS	
RETURNED VALUES	
EXITING A BLOCK	

# **READ BEFORE INSTALLING**

The directions below are the brief steps for easy installation and setup, and application implementation of a SERVOSTAR SC system. Further explanation of these steps follows in this document.



### Detailed instructions are provided in the SERVOSTAR<sup>®</sup> SC Installation Manual.

- 1. Open the box and remove all the contents. Check to ensure there is no visible damage to any of the equipment.
- 2. Mount the SERVOSTAR SC to the back panel.

Wire the SERVOSTAR SC according to the System Wiring diagrams.

- 1. **Logic Power** (for details, refer to the Electrical Specifications and Logic Power Diagram)
  - A. Apply 24 VDC to terminal 7 on connector C13.
  - B. Connect DC Common to terminal 8 on connector C13.
  - C. To daisy chain power:
    - a. Apply 24 VDC to terminal 5 on connector C13.
    - b. Connect DC Common to terminal 8 on connector C13.



Pin 5 is internally connected to Pin 7. Pin 6 is internally connected to Pin 8.

- 2. **AC Power** (for details, refer to the Electrical Specifications and the Power Diagrams)
  - A. Wire the AC power to terminals L1, L2, and L3 on the front of the SERVOSTAR SC controller.



- B. Single-phase power can be connected to any combination of L1, L2, and L3.
  - 3-Amp models (SC1x03) can be wired for 115 VAC/1ø or 230 VAC/1ø or 230 VAC/3ø.
  - 6-Amp models (SC1x06) can be wired for 115 VAC/1ø or 230 VAC/1ø or 230 VAC/3ø.

10-Amp models (SC1x10) can only be wired for 230 VAC/3ø.

- 3. **Motion Inputs** (*Refer to the appropriate Connector Diagram*)
  - A. Hardware Enable
    - a. Apply 24 VDC to terminal 8 on connector C3.
    - b. Wire DC Common to terminal 7 on connector C3.
  - B. Motion Enable
    - a. Apply 24 VDC to terminal 2 on connector C9.
    - b. Wire DC Common to terminal 1 on connector C9.

- 4. **Motor and Feedback** (*Refer to the Main Power Diagram and the appropriate Feedback Diagram*)
  - A. Connect the motor cable to terminals M1, M2, and M3 on the front of the SERVOSTAR SC controller.
  - B. Connect the feedback cable to connector C2 on the front of the SERVOSTAR SC controller.
- 5. **Inputs and Outputs** (*Refer to the appropriate I/O Diagram*)
  - A. Connect the various inputs and outputs. Pay particular attention to the sinking and sourcing diagrams for further information.
  - B. Connect the Encoder inputs according to the appropriate diagram.

### 6. **Communication and Software Setup**



**DO NOT USE connector C1!** 

To establish communication, read the Software Installation section of this guide and follow the procedures outlined in this section.



If communicating between a PC and the SERVOSTAR SC, a "crossed" serial or Ethernet cable must be used.

A. Serial Communication

Connect the serial cable to connector C7. Be sure to UNCHECK "Use Flow Control" in the Advanced settings.

#### B. Ethernet Communication

Connect the Ethernet cable to connector C6.

### 7. **DIP Switch Settings**. The settings should be:

- Switch 1 = 1
- Switch 2 = 0
- Switch 3 = 0
- Switch 4 = 0
- Switch 5 = 0
- Switch 6 = 1
- Switch 7 = 0
- Switch 8 = 0
- Switch 9 = 0

Switch 10 = 0



The switch is set to 1 (high) if it is turned to the right as you look at the front of the SERVOSTAR SC controller.

The switch is set to 0 (low) if it is turned to the left as you look at the front of the SERVOSTAR SC controller.

### 8. Install and Configure either:

- A. MotionSuite
- B. Both BASIC Moves Development Studio and **MOTIONLINK**



Do NOT install all THREE applications! You can access BASIC Moves from MotionSuite by clicking Program Development. You can access MOTIONLINK by clicking on Motor Selection & Drive Tuning.

**BE SURE TO READ AND FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS IN THE SOFTWARE INSTALLATION SECTION.** 

#### 9. Motor Selection

- A. Using the Startup Wizard in either MotionSuite Motor Selection & Drive Tuning or **MOTIONLINK**, select your particular motor.
- B. Configure the SERVOSTAR SC for your particular motor, if this was not done at the factory.
- **10. Tuning** (*Refer to the Tuning section for further details*)
  - A. Using the Startup Wizard in either MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning or **MOTIONLINK**, tune the SERVOSTAR SC velocity loop for the motor and load.
  - B. To tune the Position loop use the Record Wizard in either BASIC Moves or MotionSuite's Program Development. The record wizard can be accessed from the menu bar.
  - C. Enable the system.

#### 11. Programming Tips

- A. Develop an application using either MotionSuite's Program Development or BASIC Moves Development Studio. A sample Getting Started Program is provided in this document (see the table of contents).
- B. The Config.prg program (task) starts automatically when the SERVOSTAR SC is powered up. Use it to define global variables.
- C. The AUTOEXEC.PRG program (task) automatically starts when the SERVOSTAR SC is powered up. Use it to start other tasks that control the application.
- D. When giving position, speed, or acceleration commands, the following units are available:

Resolver-based motors have 65,636 counts per motor revolution

**Encoder-based motors** have counts equal to "4x encoder line" per motor revolution (i.e., a motor with 2048 lpr encoder has 8192 counts per motor revolution).

	<b>Rotary Units</b>	Linear Units
Position	Counts	mm
Velocity	rpm	min/sec
Acceleration	rpm/sec	min/sec <sup>2</sup>

### 12. LED Display

"0" flashing – occurs at initial power-up of the logic circuit.

- "S" flashing second phase of power-up sequence. This shows the controller is in "Conmode=1."
- **"8" displayed** indicates the drive is in position mode.
- "0" displayed indicates the drive is in velocity mode.
- "1" displayed indicates the drive is in analog velocity mode.
- "." (decimal point) displayed at bottom corner indicates drive is enabled.

**"C2" flashing** – indicates a fault and indicates the controller is in "Conmode=0." To eliminate the C2 fault, reset the motion flag by doing one of the following:

- Toggle the Motion Enable input on terminal 2 of connector C9.
- Type "sys.motion=1" from the terminal screen.
- Reset the Motion radio button in the bottom of either MotionSuite Motor Selection & Drive Tuning's or **MOTIONLINK**'s main screen.

#### 13. Conmode

- A. The SERVOSTAR has two Conmodes:
  - a. **Conmode One**: ("S" displayed) compensating for a particular motor or changing a motor parameter.
  - b. **Conmode Two**: ("8" or "0" displayed) changing all other parameters, enabling the drive and performing motion.
- B. Changing Conmodes
  - a. Conmode is changed in either MotionSuite Motor Selection & Drive Tuning's or **MOTIONLINK**'s main screen by the drop-down menu, "Conmode"
  - b. Conmode is changed at the Terminal screen in either of MotionSuite's programs or in either **MOTIONLINK** or BASIC Moves Development Studio by typing the command "sys.conmode = 1" or "sys.conmode = 2"

# **UNPACKING AND INSPECTING**

Open the box and remove all the contents. Check to ensure there is no visible damage to any of the equipment.



*Electronic components in this amplifier are design-hardened to reduce static sensitivity. However, proper procedures should be used when handling to avoid damage to equipment.* 



Remove all packing material and equipment from the shipping container. Be aware that some connector kits and other equipment pieces may be quite small and can be accidentally discarded if care is not observed when unpacking the equipment. Do not dispose of shipping materials until the packing list has been checked.



Upon receipt of the equipment, inspect components to ensure that no damage has occurred in shipment. If damage is detected, notify the carrier immediately. Check all shipping material for connector kits, documentation, diskettes, CD-ROM, or other small pieces of equipment.

## Warranty Information

All products covered in this manual are warranted to be free of defects in material and workmanship and to conform to the specifications stated either in this document or product catalog description. All Danaher Motion Kollmorgen brushless motors and electronics are warranty for a period of 24 months from the time of installation or 30 months from time of shipment, which ever comes first. There are no other warranties, expressed or implied (including the warranty of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, which extends beyond this warranty. Danaher Motion Kollmorgen warrants that the products covered in the manual are free from patent infringement when used for normal purposes.

## **Use As Directed**

The following guidelines describe the restrictions for proper use of the SERVOSTAR SC system:

- The amplifiers are components built into electrical equipment or machines and can only be commissioned as integral components of such equipment.
- The servo amplifiers are to be used only on earthed three-phase industrial mains supply networks (TN-system, TT-system with earthed neutral point).
- The servo amplifiers must not be operated on power supply networks without an earth or with an asymmetrical earth.
- If the servo amplifiers are used in residential areas, or in business or commercial premises, the user must implement additional filter measures.
- The servo amplifiers are only intended to drive specific brushless synchronous servomotors from Kollmorgen with closed-loop control of torque, speed, and position. The rated voltage of the motors must be at least as high as the DC-link voltage of the servo amplifier.
- The servo amplifiers may only be operated in a closed switchgear cabinet, taking into account the ambient conditions defined in the environmental specifications.

Kollmorgen guarantees the conformance of the servo amplifiers with the standards for industrial areas stated in this manual only if Danaher Motion Kollmorgen delivers the components (motors, cables, amplifiers etc).

#### **Part Number** Month Manufactured Year Manufactured Manufacturing Facility Unit Manufactured LISTED SERIAL NO: S98A-589 MODEL NO: 86F2 SC 1 E 03 260 - 2 G 000 0 0-0000 00 IND.CONT.EQ. Reserved Series Name (Not normally specified ) SC ServoStar SC **Firmware Version** 0100 - Version 1.0 (Not specified = most recent version) **Configuration** 1 - Single Axis Inertia/Feedback\* **Feedback R** - Resolver Motor Winding E - Encoder 0 - No comp **B** - Sine Encoder Motor Frame & Stack **000** - No comp Current Rating Motor Model 3-3 Amp 0 - No comp 6 - 6 Amp C - GOLDLINE DDL Iron Core 10 - 10 Amp D - GOLDLINE DDR G - GOLDLINE (B, BE, M, ME, XT, EB) Model L - GOLDLINE DDL Ironless 260 - Standard Model P - Platinum XT Series R - RBE Voltage Rating 0 - No Comp 1 - 115 VAC (160 VCD) 2 - 230 VAC (325 VDC) **Y** - Special Compensation (three digit extension follows Inertia/Feedback\* the Y designator) For SC1B For SC1E, SC1R 3 - Min Inertia 1 turn Endat (512) 0 - No comp 4 - Max Inertia 1 turn Endat (512) 1 - Minimum Inertia 5 - Min Inertial Multi-turn Endat (512) 2 - Maximum Inertia 6 - Max Inertial Multi-turn Endat (512) A - Min Inertia w/brake (XT15) 7 - Min Inertia 1 turn Endat (2048) 8 - Max Inertia 1 turn Endat (2048) B - Max Inertia w/brake (XT15) 9 - Min Inertia Multi-turn Endat (2048) C - Min Inertia w/brake (XT15), 1 turn Endat (512) D - Max Inertia w/brake (XT15), 1 turn Endat (512) E - Min Inertia w/brake (XT15), Multi-turn Endat (512) F - Max Inertia w/brake (XT15), 1 turn Endat (512) G - Max Inertia Multi-turn Endat (2048) H - Min Inertia w/brake (XT15), 1 turn Endat (2048) J - Max Inertia w/brake (XT15), 1 turn Endat (2048) K - Min Inertia w/brake (XT15), Multi-turn Endat (2048) L - Max Inertia w/brake (XT15), Multi-turn Endat (2048)

# MOUNTING

The SERVOSTAR SC controller is mounted vertically to the back panel for proper ventilation. These products are designed for mounting an electrical enclosure to protect them from physical and environmental damage.



## **Hardware Specifications**

Controller Model		SC1x03	SC1x06	SC1x10		
Unit Weight	lbs / Kgs	4.68 / 2.12	5.20 / 2.36	7.08 / 3.21		
Mounting Handwara	English (Metric)	10-32 (M4)				
mounting naruware	Applied Torque	20lb-in (2.26	Nm)			
	Line Screw Size/Torque					
<b>Connection Hardware</b>	Motor Screw Size/Torque	M3.5 / 12lb-in (1.35Nm)				
	Ground Screw Size/Torque					
	Control Logic (AWG/	28 – 16 / 0.5	- 1.5			
	mm <sup>2</sup> )					
	Motor Line (AWG/ mm <sup>2</sup> )	14 / .25				
	Main Input (AWG/ mm <sup>2</sup> )	14 / .25	12 / 4			
	Configurable I/O wire	22-18 AWG	(.375mm <sup>2</sup> ) Ferrule	s recommended:		
	gauge	18 AWG Typ	e H1 - 0/14 Weidm	uller 4630.0 or equivalent		
		20 AWG Type H0 - 75/14 Weidmuller 4629.0 or equivalent				
wire Size (AwG#)	Spade Terminals	16/14 AWG (1.5mm <sup>2</sup> ): Hollingsworth XSS0954S OR				
		SS20947SF or equivalent				
		12/10 AWG (4-6mm <sup>2</sup> ): Hollingsworth XSS20836 OR				
		SS20832F or	equivalent			
	Ring Terminals	8 AWG (10mm <sup>2</sup> ): Hollingsworth R3027BF or equivalent				
		6 AWG (16mm <sup>2</sup> ): Hollingsworth R4001BF or equivalent				
		4 AWG (25mm): Hollingsworth R5100BF of equivalent 2  AWG (25mm <sup>2</sup> ): Hollingsworth R7008DEN on equivalent				
Cleananae	Sida ta Sida	2  AWG (55)	in ). Honnigsworth	R/998DFN of equivalent		
Distance	Ton/Bottom	$\frac{12.71111}{2.511}$	() (m)			
		2.5III (05.5III Includes: C1	$\frac{111}{C^2 C^4 C^7 (\text{mlug } 2)}$	ft / 0 60m of strandad bus		
		ribbon) $C^{2}$				
	C3	Kollmorgen #: A 03800 013				
Mating Connector	0.5	Vendor Info	Weidmuller BI 3 5/	13 Cat No. 161574		
Hardware	C5	Kollmorgen #	# A-81014-004			
	00	Vendor Info <sup>-</sup>	PCD ELFP04110			
	Connector Screw Torque	2 25 lb-in (0	25m)			
	C9 C10 C11 C12 C13	Kollmorgen #: SSCC-100				
	C14	Vendor Info: Weidmuller 160948				
		Pin Coding E	lement, Vendor Info	: Weidmuller 169343		

# WIRING THE SERVOSTAR SC

Wire the SERVOSTAR SC according to the System Wiring Diagrams (pages 7 through 14. Be sure to apply 24 VDC for power to C13, 24 VDC for motion to C9, and apply 24 VDC for hardware enable to C3. Wire the power (115/230 VAC). Wire the motor and feedback. Refer to the appropriate Feedback Wiring Diagram (page 17 or 18) for additional information.

## Wiring Requirements

Particular care should be used when layout of an enclosure is designed. Separate power wires from small signal wires. The following guidelines highlight some important wiring practices to implement:

- Control and signal cables must be separated from power and motor cables. Distance of 8 inches (20centimeters) is sufficient in most cases.
- Control and signal cables must be shielded to reduce the effects of radiated interference.
- When control cables must cross power or motor cables, they should cross at an angle of 90 degrees, if possible. This reduces the field coupling effect.

## Grounding

System grounding is essential for proper performance of the SERVOSTAR SC system. A ground bus bar is used as a single point ground for the system. Safety grounding is provided to all pieces of the system from a "star point". In addition to the safety grounding, a high frequency ground must be provided that connects the back panel to the enclosure, and ultimately to earth ground. This provides an extremely low impedance path between the filters, drives, power supplies, and earth ground. This high frequency ground is made with the use of a flat braid or copper bus bar. Do not use a standard wire for the high frequency ground. When connecting high frequency grounds, use the shortest braid possible.

## Bonding

The proper bonding of shielded cables is imperative for minimizing noise emissions and increasing immunity levels of the SERVOSTAR SC system. Its effect is to reduce the impedance between the cable shield and the back panel. Danaher Motion Kollmorgen recommends that all shielded cables be bonded to the back panel.

Power input wiring does not require shielding (screening) if the power is fed to the cabinet (enclosure) via metallized conduit. If metallized conduit is not implemented into the system, shielded cable is required on the power input wires and proper bonding technologies should be implemented.

The motor and feedback cables should have the shield exposed as close to the SERVOSTAR SC as possible. This exposed shield is bonded to the back panel using one of the two suggested methods below.

### NON-INSULATED CABLE CLAMP

The following figures shows how cable bonding is implemented using non-insulated metallic cable clamps. The first figure demonstrates clamping to the back panel in the vicinity of the SERVOSTAR SC. The second shows a technique for bonding a terminal strip (for best results, it is recommended not to break the shielding of the cable).



### ALTERNATIVE BONDING METHODS

Another option is to use cable bonding clamps (offered by Phoenix Contact and others). When using the Phoenix Contact parts, ensure that a low impedance (high frequency) ground is connected from the ground bus bar to the back panel using either a flat braid or a copper bus bar. The SK parts from Phoenix (SK8, SK14, & SK20) slide onto the bus bar. The cable (with exposed shield) is inserted through the SK piece and the thumbscrew on top of the SK piece is used to tighten the connection between the cable shield and the bus bar.

Phoenix Contact Part #	Description	Cable Diameter Range	
3025163	Shielded terminal block - for placing the shield on bus	SK8	
Type SK8	bars.	up to 8mm or 0.315 inches	
3025176	Shielded terminal block - for placing the shield on bus	SK14	
TypeSK14	bars.	8mm to 14mm or 0.551 inches	
3025189	Shielded terminal block - for placing the shield on bus	SK20	
Type SK20	bars.	14mm to 20mm or 0.787 inches	
0404428	Support for bus bar. 2 needed to mount ground bus.	N/A	
Type AB/SS			
0402174	Bus bar material - 10mm x 3mm copper at varying	N/A	
Type NLS-CU 3/10	lengths.		

The next two figures represent a side and top view of the SK device that clamps down on the shield of the cable. The use of the Phoenix SK device is an excellent method for providing a low impedance path between the cable shield and the back panel.



Phoenix Contact -Top View

## **System Interconnect**

Connector information and the system connections up to the motor power and feedback connections are listed in the following figures. Customers making their own cables can refer to

Appendix A for pinout connections.

## **Electrical Specifications**

	Product Model	SC03	SC06	SC10
	Voltage (VAC <sub>L-L</sub> ) Nominal ±10%	110	)-230	230
	115 VAC	1φ	or 3¢	3¢ only
	230 VAC	10	or 3¢	3¢ only
	Line Frequency		47-63	
	KVA at 115	0.44 (1¢) 0.6 (3¢)	0.89 (1¢) 1.1 (3¢)	2.4 (3¢ only)
Main Input Power	KVA at 230 VAC	0.88 (1¢) 1.4 (3¢)	1.8 (1¢) 2.8	4.6 (3¢ only)
	Continuous Current (A)	6.2 (1φ) 4 (3φ)	10 (1¢) 7.8 (3¢)	13 (3¢ only)
	Peak Current (A) for 500 mSec	18.6 (1φ) 12 (3φ)	30 (1¢) 23.4 (3¢)	26 (3¢ only)
	Peak Current (A) for 2 Sec	12.4 (1¢) 8 (3¢)	20 (1¢) 15.6 (3¢)	26 (3¢ only)
	Line Fuses (FRN-R, LPN, or equivalent)	10	20	25
	Fault Contact Rating (A)	1		
	Fault Contact Closing Period (mSec)		Close = 3, Open =	= 2
Protective	OverTemperature trip (°C/°F)		80/176	
Functions	UnderVoltage Trip (nominal) (VDC)		90	
	OverVoltage Trip (VDC)		430	
	OverTemperature Trip (°C/°F)	80/176		
	Internal heat dissipation (W)	70	90	142
Logic Input	+24VDC Ext. Logic Voltage (V)		20 - 28	
Power	+24VDC Ext. Logic Current (A sink)	1.5		
SoftStart	Max. Surge Current (A)	30		
	Max. Charge Time (sec)		0.25	
	Continuous Power (KVA) at 115 VAC	0.35 (1¢)	0.7 (1¢)	1.9(2+1)
	Line Input (45°C/113°F Ambient)	0.55 (3¢)	<u>1.1 (3φ)</u>	1.8 (3φ only)
Rated Main	Continuous Power (KVA) at 230 VAC Line Input ( $45^{\circ}C/(112^{\circ}E)$ Ambient)	$0.7(1\phi)$	$1.4(1\phi)$	$2.5(2\pm only)$
Output	Continuous Current (Arms)	1.1 (3φ)	2.2 (3φ)	<u>3.3 (3ψ only)</u>
(Ma, Mb, Mc)	Deals Current (Arms) for 500 mSee	<u> </u>	19	10
	Peak Current (Arms) for 2 Sec	5	10	20
	PWM Frequency (kHz)	16	16	8
	PWM Motor Current Rinnle (kHz)	32	16	16
	Form Factor (rms/avg)	≤1.01		

Product Model		SC03	SC06	SC10
	Operation temperature (°C/°F)	5 / 41 to 45 / 113		
Environment	Storage temperature (°C/°F)	0 / 32 to 70 / 158		
	Ambient humidity (Percent)	10 to 90		
	Atmosphere	without corrosive gasses or dust		
	Altitude	Derate 5% per 1000-ft (300 m) above 3300-ft (1000 m)		
	Vibration (g)	0.5		

## **Regen Information**

P	roduct Model	SC1x03	SC1x06	SC1x10
Estemal Church Description	Peak current (amps)	20		
External Shufit Regulator	Minimum resistance ( $\Omega$ )	20		
	Watts	200		
Application Information	Capacitance (Farads)	0.00082	0.00164	
Application information	V <sub>HYS</sub> (Regen circuit turn-off) (VDC)	370		
V <sub>MAX</sub> (Regen circuit turn-on) (VDC) 390		390		
External Regen Kits	ERH-26	~	~	~

## **Control Specifications**

Connector		Control Specification
Current Loop	Update Rate	62.5 μS (16kHz)
Current Loop	Bandwidth	<2000Hz
Commutation Loop	Update Rate	62.5 μS (16kHz)
Commutation Loop	Output Waveform	Sinusoidal
	Update Rate	250 µS (4kHz)
	Bandwidth	<400Hz
	Maximum/Minimum	500Hz /[Serial: 1 RPM
Velocity Loop	Speed	or
		Analog: (1/2048) x VMAX)
	Long-term Speed	0.01% (µP clock tolerance)
	Regulation	
Position Loop	Update Rate	500 µS (2 kHz)
Reference Generator Loop	Update Rate	1 mS (1 kHz)
Reso	olver Feedback on SC1	Rxx Models (C2)
Туре	Control Transmitter	
Transformer Ratio	0.47	
Modulation Frequency	7 to 8 kHz	
Input Voltage (from drive)	4.25VAC	
Max DC Resistance	120Ω	
Max Drive Current	55 mA AC-RMS	
Output Voltage (to drive)	2VAC	

Connector Control Specification			
Digital Encoder Feedback on SC1Exx Models (C2)			
		A, B with or without Index pulse	
Required Signals		A, B Index with or without Halls Channels	
1 0		*Halls may be integral or discrete	
0. 17	A-quad-B and Marker	Differential: do not connect single-ended	
Signal Type	Halls	Differential or open collector	
System Voltage		5VDC	
Maximum Input Frequency		3MHz (or 12MHz after quadrature)	
Maximum Cable Length		System Dependent: 50-ft (15m) recommended	
Maximum Line Count		10,000,000 Lines per motor electrical cycle	
Maximum Supply Current (from SC)		250mA	
Protection		Separate voltage regulator, broken wire detector for	
		A, B, Index, and Hall channels, illegal Hall code	
		detection	
Sine E	ncoder Feedback on SC	C1Bxx Models (C2)	
		A, B with or without Index pulse	
Required Signals		A, B Index with or without Halls Channels	
		*Halls may be integral or discrete	
Signal Type	A-quad-B and Marker	Differential: do not connect single-ended	
Signal Type	Halls	Differential or open collector	
System Voltage		5VDC	
Maximum Input Frequency		3MHz	
Maximum Cable Length		System Dependent: 50-ft (15m) recommended	
Maximum Line Count		10,000,000 Lines per motor electrical cycle	
Maximum Supply Current (from SC)		250mA	
Protection		Separate voltage regulator, broken wire detector for	
		A, B, Index, and Hall channels, illegal Hall code	
		detection	
	I/O Connector (C3 b)	y pinout)	
	Maximum Voltage	$\pm$ 12V differential/single-ended	
	Input Resolution	$AIN_1 - 14$ bit + Dual Gain (15 bit)	
Analog Input I (2, 3)ANINI	Sensitivity	0.3mV/Bit	
	Voltage Range	$\pm$ 10V (Standard / Rescaled)	
	Input Impedance / CMR	10 <sup>12</sup> Ohms	
	Long-term Drift	100 ppm (0.075%/°C)	
Fault Output Relay (5, 6)	Max Capacity	1 A at 24VDC	
Remote Enable (7, 8)	Input Frequency	2.5kHz (Opto-isolated)	
Configurable Inputs(9, 10, 11)	Input Voltage Range	12V to 24V Nominal	
IN1,IN2,IN3	Min. On / Max. Off	10V/1V	
Configurable Inputs Common (7)	Current Demand per	20mA	
	Input		
Brake Control Digital Output (7, 12)	Output Voltage (max.)	$V_{MAXON}=34V, V_{MAXOFF}=0.5V$	
01	(Min. On)	1 V	
All inductive loads require proper suppression	Max. Output Current	60 mA	
Confermitie	Max. Output Current	1 mA (1K $\Omega$ internal series resistance)	
Configurable	Sensitivity / Resolution	4.9 mV/12 Bit	
Analog Oulput I $(13, 4)$ ANOUII	Voltage Range	± 10V	

Connector		Control Specification
Encoder Equivalent Output (C4 by pinout)		
	Output Voltage (high	2.5V min at 20 mA
	level) at 25° C	
A/B/I & Complements (1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8)	Output Voltage (low	0.5 max at 20 mA
	level) at 25° C	
	RS 485 Line Drive Type	DS26C31TM
R	emote Encoder Input (	C5 by pinout)
	Input Voltage (high/low	5V/0V nominal (±.2V)
	level) at 25° C	
A/B/I & Complements $(1, 2, 4, 5, 7,)$	Input Impedance	100 Ω
8)	RS 232 Line Receiver	SN75173
	Туре	
See the section on Position Loop for fea	itures using this input.	
C5 requires Differential Input. For instr	uctions using Single-ended	Pulse, refer to Appendix C.
	I/O Connector (C9 b)	y pinout)
Remote Motion Input (1, 2)	Input Frequency	2.5kHz (Opto-isolated)
SYS.DIN.1 Through SYS.DIN.4	Input Voltage Range	12V to 24V Nominal
Configurable Inputs(3, 4, 5)	Min. On/Max. Off	10V/1V
Configurable Inputs Common(1)	Current Demand per	20mA
	Input	
Configurable Digital Outputs (6, 7)	Output Voltage (max.)	$V_{MAXON}$ =30V, $V_{MAXOFF}$ =0.5V
SYS.DOUT1, SYS.DOUT.2	(Min. On)	1V
Configurable Digital Output	Max. Output Current	60 mA
Common(8)		
All Inductive loads require proper		
	I/O Connector (C10 b	v pinout)
	Input Frequency	2.5kHz (Opto-isolated)
Configurable Inputs (2, 3, 4, 5)	Input Voltage Range	12V to 24V Nominal
SYS.DIN.5 Infough SYS.DIN.8	Min On/Max Off	10V/1V
Configurable inputs Common(1)	Current Demand per	20mA
	Input	
Configurable Digital Outputs (6, 7)	Output Voltage (max.)	V <sub>MAXON</sub> =30V, V <sub>MAXOFF</sub> =0.5V
SYS.DOUT3, SYS.DOUT.4	(Min. On)	1V
Configurable Digital Output	Max. Output Current	60 mA
Common(8)	-	
All inductive loads require proper		
suppression	VO Connector (C11 h	v ninová)
Input Frequency 2 5kHz (Onto isolated)		
Configurable Inputs(2, 3, 4, 5)	Input Maltaga Danga	12V to 2 V Nominal
SYS.DIN.9 Through SYS.DIN.12	Min On/Max Off	
Configurable Inputs Common(1)	Will. Oll/Wax. Oll	10 v / 1 v 20 m A
	Input	20mA
Configurable Digital Outputs (6, 7)	Output Voltage (max)	$V_{\text{MAYON}} = 30V V_{\text{MAYOFF}} = 0.5V$
SYS.DOUT5, SYS.DOUT.6	(Min. On)	1V
Configurable Digital Output	Max. Output Current	60 mA
Common(8)	o wp w ouron	
All inductive loads require proper		
suppression		

Connector		Control Specification	
I/O Connector (C12 by pinout)			
Configurable Inputs $(2, 3, 4, 5)$	Input Frequency	2.5kHz (Opto-isolated)	
SVS DIN 13 Through SVS DIN 16	Input Voltage Range	12V to 24V Nominal	
Configurable Inputs Common(1)	Min. On/Max. Off	10V/1V	
	Current Demand per	20mA	
	Input		
Configurable Digital Outputs (6, 7)	Output Voltage (max.)	$V_{MAXON}$ =30V, $V_{MAXOFF}$ =0.5V	
SYS.DOUT7, SYS.DOUT.8	(Min. On)	1V	
Configurable Digital Output	Max. Output Current	60 mA	
Common(8)			
All inductive loads require proper			
suppression	UO Connector (C12 k	ny ninout)	
	I/U Connector (C13 b		
	Maximum voltage	±12V	
	Input Resolution	$AIN_2 - 14$ bit	
Analog Input 2 (1, 2) ANIN2	Sensitivity	0.03 mV/bit	
	Nominal Voltage	$\pm 10V$	
	Input Impedence	10 <sup>12</sup> Ohms	
Configurable Analog Output (3)	Output Voltage	0V to 10V	
ANOUT2, Configurable Analog	Max. Output Current	18 mA	
Output Common (4)	Sensitivity/ Resolution	4.9 mV/12 bit	
All Inductive loads require proper			
24V Input (5, 7) Connector 7 is	Maximum Innut Valtaga	201/	
normally used. Connector 5 is used to	Minimum Input Voltage	201	
string nower sumplies	Current Congumption		
24 V Deturn(6, 8) Connector 8 is	Current Consumption	1.1 A	
24 V Return(6, 8) Connector 8 is			
string power supplies			
	I/O Connector (C14 b	ny pipout)	
	Input Frequency	2.5kHz (Onto-isolated)	
Configurable Inputs(2, 3, 4, 5)	Input Voltage Range	12V to 24V Nominal	
SYS.DIN.1 / Through SYS.DIN.20	Min On/Max Off		
Configurable Inputs Common(1)	Current Demand per	20mA	
	Input		
Configurable Digital Outputs (6, 7)	Output Voltage (max.)	$V_{MAXON}=30V, V_{MAXOFF}=0.5V$	
SYS.DOUT9, SYS.DOUT.10	(Min. On)	1V	
Configurable Digital Output	Max. Output Current	60 mA	
Common(8)			
All inductive loads require proper			
suppression			

## **System Wiring Diagram**

### Overview



Units must be installed in an enclosure that meet the environmental IP rating of the end product (ventilation or cooling may be necessary to prevent enclosure ambient from exceeding 113° F (45° C).

## *Power* Main Power





Normally, you will use Pins 7 and 8. Pins 5 and 6 are used to daisy chain power. Pin 5 is internally connected to Pin 7. Pin 6 is internally connected to Pin 8. Refer to the logic voltage requirements listed in the Electrical Specifications table.

### **POWER DIAGRAM NOTES**

- 1 FUSE 2 and contactor may not be required if input power line is neutral. See Note 7.
- 2 Allow 30 seconds after turning power off before reapplying power
- 3 All AC Line wires should be twisted pair
- 4 The ground of the SERVOSTAR SC and motor best minimizes ground currents and noise when connected in a "star point" configuration
- 5 Cables should be properly bonded to the back panel and implemented as close to the SERVOSTAR SC side of the cable as possible for effective grounding. If bonding is installed, the shield on the cable end need not be connected to the "star point" configuration. Only connect the shield on one end of the cable, preferably on the SERVOSTAR SC side.
- 6 See CE Filtering Techniques for further information.
- 7 This system is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 5000 RMS symmetrical amperes, 240V maximum.
- 8 All inductive loads require proper suppression.

## Encoder I/O

### C4 Encoder Equivalent Output (D9P)







C5 requires Differential Input. For instructions using Single-ended Pulse, refer to Appendix C.

## **Communication**

### C6 – Ethernet Connector

A standard "crossed" Ethernet cable must be used when connecting directly between the PC and SERVOSTAR SC.

If connecting the PC and SERVOSTAR SC via an Ethernet hub, an "uncrossed" Ethernet cable must used.

### C7 (COM1) Serial Communication Interface\*



### C8 (COM2) HMI Interface\*



\*/ m \*/

\*Do not connect unused pins on C7 and C8 connectors. Some manufacturers' cables connecting all pins may give unpredictable operation.

\*A standard "crossed" serial cable must be used when connecting directly between the PC and SERVOSTAR SC.

## **I/O** Connectors





See the Electrical Specifications for loading information.

### C9 Configurable User I/O

(Inputs can be sinking or sourcing – shown sourcing.)



### C10 Configurable User I/O

(Inputs can be sinking or sourcing - shown sourcing.)



### C11 Configurable User I/O

(Inputs can be sinking or sourcing - shown sourcing.)



### C12 Configurable User I/O

(Inputs can be sinking or sourcing – shown sourcing.)



C13 User I/O (ANIN2)



### C14 Configurable User I/O

(Inputs can be sinking or sourcing - shown sourcing.)



### **DIGITAL INPUTS**

### SOURCING OR SINKING

All DC inputs can be wired in a sinking our sourcing configuration.



All inputs on the same connector must use the same configuration.







All inputs that share a common pin must be connected as either sinking or sourcing.

The input commons (C9 Pin 1, C10 Pin 1, C11 Pin 1, C12 Pin1, C14 Pin1) are not connected inside the SERVOSTAR. Likewise, the input and output commons for each connector (Pins 1 and 8) are not connected inside the SERVOSTAR on C3, C9, C10, C11, C12, and C14.

### DIGITAL OUTPUTS

Connector C3 can only be wired in as sourcing. Connectors C9, C10, C11, C12, and C14 can only be wired sinking.

# SOURCING EQUIVALENT DIGITAL OUTPUT CIRCUIT FOR CONNECTOR C3





All inputs that share a common pin must be connected as either sinking or sourcing.

The output commons (C9 Pin 8, C10 Pin 8, C11 Pin 8, C12 Pin 8, C14 Pin 8) are also not connected inside the SERVOSTAR. Likewise, the input and output commons (Pins 1 and 8) are not connected inside the SERVOSTAR on C3, C9, C10, C11, C12, and C14.

DIP Switch		
Switch #	Function	Settings
1		Must be set to Open (1)
2		Must be set to Closed (0)
3	Base	Must be set to Closed (0)
4	Settings	Must be set to Closed (0)
5		Must be set to Closed (0)
6	Configuration Bypass	0 = CONFIG.PRG or AUTOEXEC PRG do
	Dypuss	not run on power-up
7	HOLD Mode Switch	0 = Hold Mode Inactive (Default) 1 = Hold Active
8	SC Enable/ Disable	0 = Enable ( <b>Default</b> ) 1 = Disable
9	Safe Upgrade	0 = Closed ( <b>Default</b> ) 1 = Loads backup firmware
10	Boot Diagnostic	0 = Closed (Default) 1 = Boot Diagnostic on power-up

## **DIP Switch Settings**

The 10-position DIP switch is provided for diagnostic and setup purposes.

This switch provides the following functions: **Bypass**: Activating switch 6 causes the drive to bypass configuration. CONFIG.PRG and AUTOEXEC.PRG do not run if this switch is closed.

**Hold**: Activating Switch 7 (normal state is closed) causes the SERVOSTAR SC to go into a hold state.

**Disable**: Activating Switch 8 (normal state is closed) disables the SERVOSTAR SC.

**Safe Upgrade**: Activating Switch 9 allows safe upgrades. The normal state is closed. The backup version of the firmware is loaded when this switch is open.

**Boot diagnostics**. If this switch is open, the controller prints diagnostic information over COM2 (C8).



#### Top View



DIP switches are in the "ON" or "Open" position when they are pushed to the right as you are looking from the front of the drive.
### Feedback



For all other types of feedback motors, please contact Danaher Motion Customer Support-Radford.

#### **C2** Feedback Connector

GOLDLINE B and M Series Motors				
Pin	Resolver	Encoder	Sine Encoder	
1	Sine High	А	А	
2	Sine Low	/A	/A	
3	Shield	Shield	Shield	
4	Cosine High	В	В	
5	Cosine Low	/B	/B	
6	Shield	Shield	Shield	
7		E5V Return	E5v Return	
8		E5V Return	E5V Return	
9		H1B	H1B or C or Data*	
10		H2B	H2B or D or Clock*	
11		H3B	H3b	
12	Shield	Shield	Shield	
13	Thermostat	Thermostat	Thermostat	
	High	High	High	
14	Shield	Shield	Shield	
15	Ref. High Out	Index	Index	
16	Ref. Low Out	/Index	/Index	
17	Shield	Shield	Shield	
18		E5V Supply	E5V Supply	
19		E5V Supply	E5V Supply	
20		E5V Supply	E5V Supply	
21	Shield	Shield	Shield	
22		H1A	H1A or C or Data*	
23		H2A	H2A or D or Clock*	
24		H3A	H3A	
25	Thermostat	Thermostat	Thermostat	
	LOW	LOW	LOW	

\*The SERVOSTAR SC works with sine encoders with Halls feedback, sine encoders with C and D channels, and sine encoders with ENDAT RS45 serial channels.

GOLDLINE XT and DDR Motors			
Pin	Resolver	Encoder	Sine Encoder
1	Sine High	Α	А
2	Sine Low	/A	/A
3			
4	Cosine High	В	В
5	Cosine Low	/B	/B
6			
7		E5V Return	E5v Return
8		E5V Return	E5V Return
9		H1B	H1B or C or
			Data*
10		H2B	H2B or D or
			Clock*
11		H3B	H3b
12			
13	Thermostat	Thermostat	Thermostat
	High	High	High
14			
15	Ref. High Out	Index	Index
16	Ref. Low Out	/Index	/Index
17			
18		E5V Supply	E5V Supply
19		E5V Supply	E5V Supply
20		E5V Supply	E5V Supply
21			
22		H1A	H1A or C or
			Data*
23		H2A	H2A or D or
			Clock*
24		H3A	H3A
25	Thermostat	Thermostat	Thermostat
	Low	Low	Low

\*The SERVOSTAR SC works with sine encoders with Halls feedback, sine encoders with C and D channels, and sine encoders with ENDAT RS45 serial channels.

### DIAGRAMS FOR GOLDLINE B & M MOTORS



#### NOTES:

THREE ENCODER SUPPLY CONNECTIONS ARE PROVIDED TO MINIMIZE VOLTAGE DROP IN CABLE. THE THREE ENCODER SUPPLY CONNECTIONS ARE HARD-WIRED TOGETHER INSIDE THE CONTROLLER. ONLY ONE SET NEED BE USED IN LOW CURRENT ENCODERS USING SHORT CABLE LENGTH.

IF YOU HAVE OPEN COLLECTOR HALLS, TIE PINS 22, 23, & 24 TO +5v.

#### MOTOR OVERLOAD PROTECTION

MOTORS MUST HAVE INTEGRAL THERMAL PROTECTION OR EXTERNAL MOTOR OVERLOAD MUST BE USED. THERMOSTAT SWITCH MAY SEE +12 VOLTS AND 20 MA.

### DIAGRAMS FOR GOLDLINE XT & DDR MOTORS



#### NOTES:

THREE ENCODER SUPPLY CONNECTIONS ARE PROVIDED TO MINIMIZE VOLTAGE DROP IN CABLE. THE THREE ENCODER SUPPLY CONNECTIONS ARE HARD-WIRED TOGETHER INSIDE THE CONTROLLER. ONLY ONE SET NEED BE USED IN LOW CURRENT ENCODERS USING SHORT CABLE LENGTH.

IF YOU HAVE OPEN COLLECTOR HALLS, TIE PINS 22, 23, & 24 TO +5v.

#### MOTOR OVERLOAD PROTECTION

MOTORS MUST HAVE INTEGRAL THERMAL PROTECTION OR EXTERNAL MOTOR OVERLOAD MUST BE USED. THERMOSTAT SWITCH MAY SEE +12 VOLTS AND 20 MA.

# **Feedback Devices**

For motor positioning and commutation, the SERVOSTAR SC can utilize a resolver, digital encoder (with or without hall-effect sensor signals), or sine encoder feedback. Danaher Motion Kollmorgen offers a variety of motors with options for these various feedback devices. The feedback requirements are discussed below.

# Digital Encoder

The SERVOSTAR SC can use encoder feedback to monitor the motor shaft position. The encoder is an incremental device that indicates changes in position. The encoder resolution of the SERVOSTAR SC and the encoder equivalent output is fixed because it is a hardware characteristic of the encoder device. The encoder interface includes three groups of wires:

- 1. A/B (and complements) lines make up the encoder quadrature signals. The signals are received differentially through line receivers before being passed through a wire-break detection circuit.
- 2. The narrow Index pulse normally appears once per revolution and indicates a known physical position of the shaft. This pulse is received differentially through a line receiver before being passed through a wire-break detection circuit. This signal is hardware capturable.
- 3. Hall-effect sensor signals provide information representing the approximate absolute location of the motor shaft. From this information, the motor can sinusoidally commutate forward until the index signal is detected at which time true position is known. These signals are isolated by an opto-coupler and can be differential or open-collector type signals.

#### CABLE LENGTHS

The recommended cable length when using the SERVOSTAR SC to source the encoder is no longer than 50 feet (15 meters). Long encoder cables tend to have high DC resistance that may create significant loading effects in the supply lines to the encoder. An option that would allow the use of longer lengths, implements a separate supply located at the motor to source the encoder. Quadrature signals returned to the SERVOSTAR SC are differentially connected, which normally do not constitute a problem with longer cable lengths.

#### **RESOLUTION AND ACCURACY**

A SERVOSTAR SC encoder-based system typically exhibits minimal inaccuracies outside of the encoder itself. To get an approximate total value, the customer need only look to the specifications listed for the encoder being used.

### Resolver

The SERVOSTAR SC uses either single- (two poles) or multi-speed (multiple poles) resolver feedback to monitor the motor shaft position. The resolver functions similar to a transformer whose output is unique for any given shaft position (an absolute position feedback). The transformer is driven with a sinewave reference signal. Two AC signals are returned from the resolver into the Sine and Cosine inputs. All three of these sinewave signals are low-level and susceptible to noise.

### CABLE LENGTHS

It is important to use properly shielded cable and to keep it away from other noise-radiating devices and cables. Do not run the feedback and motor cables in the same conduit. Kollmorgen has tested cable lengths up to 750 feet (229 meters) without degradation of performance. However, performance may vary depending on motor and resolver type. Tests were performed with standard Kollmorgen cable and its low-impedance, Kollmorgen **GOLD**LINE motor resolver. Please consult factory for cable and resolver impedance specifications when long cable runs above 250 feet (76 meters) are desired. Kollmorgen recommends twisted-shielded pair for feedback cables.

#### **RESOLUTION AND ACCURACY**

The SERVOSTAR SC calculates motor velocity as the derivative of position (change in position over time). With its patented technique, all readings are extended to a resolution of 16-bit. For velocity feedback calculations, the SERVOSTAR SC converts the resolver input to 18-bits of resolution giving smooth motor velocity control. The digital resolution (RDRES) of the Resolver-to-Digital Converter system is determined automatically according to the application velocity limit (VLIM). The following is a summary of the SERVOSTAR SC's resolution capabilities:

<b>R/D CONVERTER SPECIFICATIONS</b>				
VLIM (RPM)	RDRES	Counts/Rev	Encoder Eqv. Output (C4)	
> 6100	12	4096	4096 quad counts	
1500 to 6100	14	16384	16384 quad counts	
< 1500	16	65536	65536 quad counts	

System accuracy using resolver feedback is affected by several components. The following table gives the user information on the inaccuracy that each of these components contribute to the total accuracy of a standard SERVOSTAR SC system:

	0115
Components	ArcMinutes
R/D Converter	4
Resolver mechanics (rotational)	8
Resolver mounting on motor shaft	2
Inter-LSB (digital dither over the least significant bit)	5
Total (Worse-case)	19

#### RESOLVER ACCURACY SPECIFICATIONS

### Sine Encoder

The SERVOSTAR SC can receive an analog (or sine) encoder feedback device to monitor the motor shaft position. As opposed to a digital encoder, which generates incremental square-wave signals, a sine encoder outputs analog differential sinusoidal signals. These sine signals are quadrature-decoded and passed to an interpolation circuit that breaks each 360° cycle into 256 parts before passing it to the drive's control board. Thus, the resolution seen by the drive is 256 times the fundamental sinusoidal track on the motor's encoder. The advantage of this approach is the ability to achieve high encoder resolution while maintaining a relatively low input frequency through the cable and into the SERVOSTAR SC. The encoder interface includes three groups of wires:

1. A/B (and complements) lines make up the encoder quadrature signals. The signals are received differentially at 1V peak-to-peak amplitudes before being processed by the interpolation circuitry.

- 2. The narrow Index pulse normally appears once per mechanical revolution and indicates a known physical position of the shaft. This pulse is received differentially through an op amp before being squared up and sent to the control board.
- 3. Upon power up, commutation signals are used to communicate coarse position information. The first three signal types give approximate position information so the drive can commutate the motor forward until the Index pulse is found. (There are situations where the index signal is not available. Course position information is used to commutate the motor indefinitely.) The fourth gives absolute information bypassing the need for the Index signal. They are:
  - There are no Hall signals if there are no power-up commutation signals available. The SERVOSTAR SC can excite two phases and lock the shaft in place. It then approximates the position of the locked shaft and uses only the incremental signals to commutate forward until the index is found.
  - Hall signals provide information representing the approximate location of the motor shaft (6 transitions per electrical cycle of the motor). From this information, the motor can six-step commutate forward until the index signal is detected, at which time true position is known and sinusoidal commutation begins. These signals are isolated by an opto-coupler and can be differential or open-collector type signals.
  - C/D lines are an alternative to Hall signals. These lines provide a SIN/COS sinusoidal signal where one electrical cycle equals one mechanical revolution (identical to single-speed resolver feedback). Interpolation is performed on these signals and absolute position is known within 256 parts of a mechanical revolution. The motor can commutate forward until the Index signal is detected.
  - Sine encoders with Endat capability add another approach to communicating commutation position. Here, absolute position information is stored in the encoder and is serially communicated to the drive upon power up. The data is received synchronously by a clock signal provided by the drive. Absolute position is known immediately;so an index signal is not needed.

### CABLE LENGTHS

The recommended cable length when using the SERVOSTAR SC to source the sine encoder is no longer than 50 ft. (15 m.). Long encoder cables tend to have high DC resistance that may create significant loading affects in the supply lines to the encoder. Consider this carefully when designing the system. An option that would allow the use of longer lengths would be to put a separate supply at the motor to source the encoder. Except for noise susceptibility, signals returned to the drive are differentially connected, which normally do not constitute a problem with longer cable lengths.

### **RESOLUTION AND ACCURACY**

Internal resolution of the system can be derived through the following calculation: Encoder line resolution x 256 x 4 (quadrature).

System accuracy is largely dependent upon the accuracy of the encoder itself. To get an approximate total value, the customer need only look to the specifications listed for the encoder being used.

# Filtering

# **CE Filtering Techniques**

The SERVOSTAR SC system (SERVOSTAR SC and motor) meets the CE Mark standards stated in the front of this manual. Apply proper bonding and grounding techniques, described earlier in this section, when incorporating EMC noise filtering components to meet this standard.

Noise currents often occur in two types. The first is conducted emissions passed through ground loops. The quality of the system-grounding scheme inversely determines the noise amplitudes in the lines. These conducted emissions are of a common-mode nature from line-to-neutral (ground). The second is radiated high-frequency emissions that are usually capacitively coupled from line-to-line and are differential in nature.

To properly mount the filters, the enclosure should have an unpainted metallic surface. This allows for more surface area to be in contact with the filter housing and provide a lower impedance path between the housing and the back plane. The back panel should have a high frequency ground strap connection to the enclosure frame and earth ground.

# Input Power Filtering

The Kollmorgen SERVOSTAR SC electronic system components require EMI filtering in the input power leads to meet the conducted emission requirements for the industrial environment. This filtering blocks conducted-type emissions from exiting onto the power lines and provides a barrier for power line EMI.

Adequately size the system. The type of filter must be based on the voltage and current rating of the system and whether the incoming line is single- or three-phase. One input line filter may be used for multi-axis control applications. These filters should be mounted as close to the incoming power as possible so noise is not capacitively coupled into other signal leads and cables. Take care when routing wires from the load side of the filter to the BUS Module. These lines may be noisy and should be separated from other sensitive cabling to avoid unwanted coupling of noise. Several manufacturers of these filters are listed below. They should be able to recommend the best filter design for most typical motor control applications. Kollmorgen has also provided specific filters recommendations that will adequately attenuate the conducted noise to levels well below the CE limits. Implement the EMI filter according to the following guidelines:

- Filter should be mounted as close as possible to incoming cabinet power.
- When mounting the filter to the panel, remove any paint or material covering. Use an unpainted metallic back panel, if possible.
- Filters are provided with an earth connection. All ground connections should be tied to ground.
- Filters can produce high leakage currents. Filters must be earthed before connecting the supply!
- So not touch filters for a period of 10 seconds after removing the power supply.

RECOMMENDED LINE FILTERS			
BUS Module Model #	<b>Recommended EMI Line Filter</b>	Kollmorgen Part #	
PA08 (Single phase)	Filter Concepts SF10	N/A	
PA08 (3 phase)	Schaffner FN258-30/07	A-96776-003	
PA28	Schaffner FN258-30/07	A-96776-003	
PA50	Schaffner FN258-55/07	A-96776-005	
PA75	Schaffner FN258-75/34	A-96777-001	
PA85	Schaffner FN258-100/35	A-96777-002	
PALM	Corcom F7202A	A-97181	
PA14 (single phase)	Filter Concepts SF15	N/A	
PA14 (3 phase)	Schaffner FN258-30/07	A-96776-003	

RECOMMENDED LINE FILTERS			
BUS Module Model #	<b>Recommended EMI Line Filter</b>	Kollmorgen Part #	
SC1x (single phase) (3 and 6 amps)	Filter Concepts SF15	N/A	
SC1x (3 phase) (3 amp)	FN 258-7/07	N/A	
SC1x (3 phase) (6 and 10 amps)	FN258-16/07	N/A	

# Motor Line Filtering

Motor filtering may not be necessary for CE compliance of SERVOSTAR SC systems. However, this additional filtering increases the reliability of the system. Poor non-metallic enclosure surfaces and lengthy, unbonded (or unshielded) motor cables that couple noise line-to-line (differential) are some of the factors that may lead to the necessity of motor lead filtering.

Motor lead noise is either common-mode or differential. The common-mode conducted currents occur between each motor lead and ground (line-to-neutral). Differential radiated currents exist from one motor lead to another (line-to-line). The filtering of the lines feeding the motor provides additional attenuation of noise currents that may enter surrounding cables and equipment I/O ports in close proximity.

Differential mode currents commonly occur with lengthy motor cables. As the cable length increases, so does its capacitance and ability to couple noise from line-to-line. While every final system is different and every application of the product causes a slightly different emission profile, it may become necessary to use differential mode chokes to provide additional noise attenuation to minimize the radiated emissions. The use of a ferrite core placed at the SERVOSTAR SC end on each motor lead (shown in the diagram below), attenuates differential mode noise and lowers frequency (30 to 60 MHz) broadband emissions to within specifications. Kollmorgen recommends a Fair-Rite P/N 263665702 (or equivalent) ferrite core. Wrap each motor lead through the core several times as shown in the figure on the next page.



Never wrap a ground lead through a core.



Common mode currents occur from noise spikes created by the PWM switching frequency of the SERVOSTAR SC. The use of a ferrite or iron-powder core toroid places common mode impedance in the line between the motor and the SERVOSTAR SC. The use of a common mode choke on the motor leads may increase signal integrity of encoder outputs and associated I/O signals. A list of toroidal and ferrite cores that can be used to make common mode chokes is found in the following tables.

TOROIDAL CORE RECOMMENDATIONS				
Manufacturer	Manufacturer's Part #		Size	
Micrometals	T400-26D	OD 4 in (102mm)	ID 2.25in (57.2mm)	HT 1.3in (33mm)
Micrometals	ST102-267	OD 1.025 in (26mm)	ID .6 in (15.2mm)	HT .475 in (12.1mm)
Micrometals	ST150-275B	OD 1.52 in (38.6mm)	ID835 in (21.2mm)	HT .825 in (21mm)
Micrometals	ST200-275B	OD 2.01 in (51.1mm)	ID 1.24 in (31.5mm)	HT 1.025 in (26mm)
Magnetics	77930-A7	OD 1.09 in (27.7mm)	ID .555in (14.1mm)	HT .472 in (11.99mm)
Fair-Rite	2643803802	OD 2.3 in (61mm)	ID 1.4in (35.55mm)	HT .5in (12.7mm)

PRE-WOUND COMMON-MODE CHOKES				
Manufacturer	Manufacturer's Part #	Kollmorgen Part #	Description	
Schaffner	RD7137-36-0m5	A-96843-005	500μH 3 phase common mode choke. 36 amps continuous.	
Schaffner	RD8137-64-0m5	A-96843-010	500μH 3 phase common mode choke. 64 amps continuous.	

# I/O Filtering

I/O filtering may be desired, depending on system installation, application, and integration with other equipment. It may be necessary to place ferrite cores on I/O lines to avoid unwanted signals entering and disturbing the SERVOSTAR SC system or other associated equipment. The following chart lists some ferrite parts that may be used for I/O filtering and noise attenuation. These parts are ideal for providing inline common mode impedance for I/O lines (Fair-Rite Products Corporation has a varied selection, which suits most applications).

I/O FILTER RECOMMENDATIONS				
Manufacturer	Manufacturer's Part #	Kollmorgen Part #	Description	
Ferrishield	SS33B2032	A-96770-003	Clamp on core	
Ferrishield	SS33B2036	A-96769-005	Clamp on core	
Ferrishield	FA28B2480	A-96771-003	Clamp on core - flat cable clamp	
Ferrishield	SA28B4340	A-96772-009	Clamp on core - flat cable clamp	
* Fair-Rite	2643167251			

\* This core must be used with the SERVOSTAR SC for CE compliance. It should be applied to the 24V input power lines and the Remote Enable lines (7&8 on C3 connector) with approximately 3 turns through the core.

The following figure illustrates the use of multiple turns through a clamp-on core. The more turns created, the more impedance is added to the line. Avoid putting the shield in a clamp-on core. It is undesirable to place an impedance in-line with the shield. The use of ribbon cable may be common in many cabinets. Some ferrite clamps are designed just for ribbon cable.





Flat cable clamp used with ribbon cable

# Filter and Bonding Diagram



# SOFTWARE INSTALLATION

The SERVOSTAR SC has three software interface programs: MotionSuite, **MOTIONLINK**, and BASIC Moves Development Studio. These are provided to communicate to the SERVOSTAR SC through either the serial port (connector C7) or Ethernet port (connector C6).

**MOTIONLINK** is a Windows-based program designed to assist your in setting up and configuring the SERVOSTAR SC's operation. This software package can be downloaded from the PSP CD-ROM.

After the SERVOSTAR SC has been setup and configured, you will use BASIC Moves Development Studio to write and debug motion programs for the SERVOSTAR SC.

MotionSuite is the newest addition of Windows-based software and incorporates both **MOTIONLINK** and BASIC Moves Development Studio in one user interface. When using MotionSuite, you eliminate the need for installing two software applications. It also has an easy-to-use interface for the user to switch between the two functions provided by **MOTIONLINK** (setting up and configuring the drive) and BASIC Moves Development Studio (writing and debugging motion programs).

After you install either MotionSuite or both **MOTIONLINK** and BASIC Moves Development Studio, you will need to configure the TCP/IP server, which is the communication support software for the serial port and Ethernet. This software is required to communicate with and program the SERVOSTAR SC.

Since the software is designed to guide you through the operation process of the SERVOSTAR SC, the MotionSuite, **MOTIONLINK**, and BASIC Moves Development Studio discussions in this section cover only general steps of use.

MotionSuite, **MOTIONLINK**, and BASIC Moves Development Studio can be found on the PSP CD-ROM that accompanied your hardware, or can be downloaded from the Kollmorgen website at http://www.MotionVillage.com/products/software\_downloads/. Be sure you complete the hardware installation and wiring of the SERVOSTAR SC before you continue.

The instructions provided here assume several things:

- That you are using a stand-alone PC with a minimum operating system of Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 3, or Windows 95 Version 4.0, or Windows98 Version 4.10 installed in the default directories.
- That you have the operating system diskettes or CD-ROM on hand before you begin installation.
- That you have sufficient knowledge to run self-executing files and basic installation. If you need step-by-step procedures (including graphics), refer to Appendix B.



If you are using a networked PC, you will need to have the network operating system diskettes or CD-ROM available or have a system administrator with you who would have access to these files.

# **Computer Requirements**

MotionSuite, **MOTIONLINK**, and BASIC Moves Development Studio all have the following computer requirements:

- IBM compatible, Pentium or higher computer.
- ◆ 16M RAM.
- Windows95, Windows98, Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 3, Windows 2000
- CD-ROM player
- Standard Video Adapter (CGA, MDA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, and SVGA).
- Serial Port (communication link with SERVOSTAR SC).

# Installing BASIC Moves Development Studio



# *If you have installed MotionSuite, do NOT install BASIC Moves Development Studio.*

You will want to install BASIC Moves Development Studio on your PC to create, debug, and run programs that operate the SERVOSTAR SC. BASIC Moves Development Studio is distributed on the PSP CD-ROM or can be downloaded from the website (www.MotionVillage.com).

During installation, you will be asked a series of questions that you should respond to appropriately to ensure proper operation of the SERVO**STAR** SC. You will be guided through the setup by the installation setup program located on the CD-ROM.

Before you begin the installation, close all other applications as they may interfere with the installation process. On a Windows NT system, you may be logged in as any user. It is not necessary to be logged in as the Administrator.

- 1. To start the installation, place the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive. The setup program should automatically start. If not, run AUTORUN.EXE from the CD-ROM.
- 2. Select SERVOSTAR SC. You will see the Welcome Screen:
- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Verify that you are installing the correct software.
- 5. Click Next.
- 6. If you wish to change the destination location, click Browse. Otherwise, go to step 8.
- 7. Select the destination directory by highlighting (as shown above) and click OK.
- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Choose the components you wish to install. Kollmorgen recommends selecting all the components.
- 10. Click Next.

- 11. Select the group for BASIC Moves Development Studio.
- 12. Click Next.
- 13. Click Next to begin installing BASIC Moves.
- 14. When complete, you will have to choose if you wish to add the icon to your Desktop.
- 15. If you choose Yes, the icon is added to your desktop.
- 16. Your configuration files will be updated next.
- 17. Wait for this process to be completed.
- 18. Edit the IP address file only performed if the "Serial and Ethernet Communication Support" option was checked. If you select No, go to step 21.



# If you are using Windowds95/98, install the "Serial and Ethernet Control", but do not configure the IP file at this time. Select "No" at this screen.

- 19. Click Add.
- 20. Enter the available IP addresses and corresponding Subnet Masks. If you want to edit the IP address file at a later time (e.g., you do not know what IP address(es) to assign), click "No" and the installation will conclude. To perform communications configuration at a later time, execute the "IP Pool Editor" from the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite > IP Pool Editor).
- 21. If you checked the option, KMTG Motion Development Kit, you will now begin that installation process. If KMTG Motion Development Kit was checked, go to step 32.
- 22. Click Next.
- 23. If you wish to change the destination location, click Browse. Otherwise, go to step 25.
- 24. Select the destination directory by highlighting (as shown above) and click OK.
- 25. Click Next.
- 26. Choose the components you wish to install. Kollmorgen recommends selecting all the components.
- 27. Click Next.
- 28. Select the group for KMTG Motion Developer Group.
- 29. Click Next.
- 30. Click Next to begin the installation.
- 31. This may take several minutes.
- 32. Click Finish.

The installation process has created a program group and folder in the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite) with links to the BASC Moves Development Studio application and created an icon on the Desktop (if you chose this option). However, you must now install the communication support you wish to use. Go to either the Installing Ethernet Communication Support or Installing Serial Communication Support section.

# Installing MOTIONLINK

You will want to install **MOTIONLINK** on your PC as **MOTIONLINK** is used to configure the SERVOSTAR SC. The **MOTIONLINK** program is located on the PSP CD-ROM.



If you have installed MotionSuite, do NOT install MOTIONLINK.

- 1. Insert the SERVO**STAR** PSP CD-ROM. The CD-ROM should Autorun. If not, run AUTORUN.EXE from the CD-ROM.
- 2. Select SERVOSTAR SC.
- 3. Select MOTIONLINK Install. You will see the MOTIONLINK Welcome screen.
- 4. Verify that you are installing the correct software and click Next.
- 5. If you wish to change the destination location, click Browse. Otherwise, go to step 7.
- 6. Select the destination directory by highlighting (as shown above) and click OK.
- 7. Click Next.
- 8. Choose the components you wish to install. Kollmorgen recommends selecting all the components.
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. Select the group for **MOTIONLINK** to reside in.
- 11. Click Next.
- 12. Click Next to begin installing **MOTIONLINK**.
- 13. The program is installed. You can watch the progress on the screen.
- 14. The system configuration is updated. Wait for this to finish.
- 15. Once the components are installed, you must choose if you wish to edit the IP address file.
- 16. If you select No, the controls will be registered. Go to step 20. If you select Yes, continue with step 17.

17. Editing the IP address file is only performed if the "Serial and Ethernet Communication Support" option was checked.



If you are using Windowds95/98, install the "Serial and Ethernet Control", but do not configure the IP file at this time. Select "No" at this screen.

18. Click Add.

- 19. Enter the available IP addresses and corresponding Subnet Masks. If you want to edit the IP address file at a later time (e.g., you do not know what IP address(es) to assign), click "No" and the installation will conclude. To perform communications configuration at a later time, execute the "IP Pool Editor" from the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite > IP Pool Editor).
- 20. You should now get a successful completion screen.
- 21. You will need to decide if you wish to add **MOTIONLINK** to your Start Menu and your Desktop. You can also view the README file once you click "Finish."
- 22. If you chose to add **MOTIONLINK** to your Desktop, you will see the icon on your desktop.

The installation process has created a program group and folder in the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite) with links to the **MOTIONLINK** application and created an icon on the Desktop (if you chose this option). **MOTIONLINK** installation is now complete. However, you must now install the communication support you wish to use. Go to either the Installing Ethernet Communication Support or Installing Serial Communication Support section.

# Installing MotionSuite

Installing MotionSuite on your PC allows you to configure the drive as well as program the controller. The MotionSuite program is located on the PSP CD-ROM or can be downloaded from our website.



If you are installing MotionSuite, you do NOT need to install either MOTIONLINK or BASIC Moves Development Studio as both of these programs run in MotionSuite.

- 1. Insert the SERVOSTAR PSP CD-ROM. It should AutoRun. If not, run AUTORUN.EXE from the CD-ROM.
- 2. Select SERVOSTAR SC.
- 3. You will see a link for MotionSuite. Click on it and you will see the Welcome screen.
- 4. Be sure you have closed out all other Window applications before continuing. Click Next.
- 5. If you wish to change the destination location, click Browse. Otherwise, go to step 7.
- 6. Select the destination directory by highlighting (as shown above) and click OK.
- 7. Click Next.

- 8. Uncheck any components you do NOT wish installed.
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. Choose the Program Manager Group you wish to store these program in. If you are unsure, leave the default.
- 11. Click Next.
- 12. Click Next to begin installing MotionSuite.
- 13. The program will be installed. You can watch the progress on the screen.
- 14. The system configuration will be updated. Wait for this to finish.
- 15. You are asked if you wish to edit the IP file. If selecting No, go to step 20.



If you are using Windowds95/98, install the "Serial and Ethernet Control", but do not configure the IP file at this time. Select "No" at this screen.

- 16. If you selected Yes, click Add.
- 17. Enter the available IP addresses and corresponding Subnet Masks. If you want to edit the IP address file at a later time (e.g., you do not know what IP address(es) to assign), click "No" and the installation will conclude. To perform communications configuration at a later time, execute the "IP Pool Editor" from the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite > IP Pool Editor).
- 18. Uncheck any of the options above you do NOT wish installed.
- 19. Click Finish.
- 20. The MotionSuite desktop icon will be seen on your desktop if you installed it there.
- 21. The BASIC Moves desktop icon will be seen on your desktop if you installed it there.
- 22. The **MOTIONLINK** desktop icon will be seen on your desktop if you installed it there.

MotionSuite installation is now complete. However, you must now install the communication support you wish to use. Go to either the Installing Ethernet Communication Support or Installing Serial Communication Support section.

# Communication

In order to communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, your PC must be connected to the Ethernet port (C6 connector) or the serial port (C7 connector). C8 is reserved for the Human Machine Interface (HMI).

# Installing Ethernet Communication Support

In order to use Ethernet, a unique IP address must be used for each SERVO**STAR** SC placed on the network. You will also need to obtain the proper subnet maks for the IP address.

You <u>do not</u> have to communicate via serial first to assign the address. Kollmorgen provides a utility called the "IP Pool Editor" which allows you to maintain a list of the IP addresses that are assigned to your controllers. Follow the directions below to use this utility.



If you are using a networked PC, you will need to have the network operating system diskettes or CD-ROM available or have a system administrator with you who would have access to these files.

# BASIC MOVES AND MOTIONLINK

In order to use TCP/IP, you must first install both the **MOTIONLINK** and BASIC Moves Development Studio applications with the steps above, selecting Ethernet Control from the component list).

- 1. Launch the IP Pool File Editor.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter the available IP addresses and corresponding Subnet Masks assigned by your network administrator for your SERVO**STAR** SC(s). For an Example of Choosing an IP Address, refer to Appendix B.
- 4. Click OK.

This completes the Ethernet configuration.

### MOTIONSUITE

In order to use TCP/IP, you must first install MotionSuite with the steps above, selecting Ethernet Control from the component list).

- 1. Open MotionSuite.
- 2. Click IP Pool Edit. There will be no IP Addresses shown if none have been configured.
- 3. If an IP Address has been configured, you will see that information displayed.
- 4. Click Add.

- 5. Enter the appropriate IP address and subnet mask. For an Example of Choosing an IP Address, refer to Appendix B.
- 6. Click OK.

This completes the Ethernet configuration.

# **Installing Serial Communication Support**

For serial communications, Kollmorgen uses Windows Dial-Up Networking (DUN) to connect to the SERVOSTAR SC. Depending on your operating system, the installation procedure is different. Select the appropriate procedure based on your operating system as outlined below.

Windows NT – pages 34 through 37 Windows 95 – pages 37 through 39 Windows 98 – pages 39 through 41 Windows 2000 – pages 41 through 43

### WINDOWS NT

- 1. Make sure you are using Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 3.
- 2. Connect a null modem cable from the PC to the SERVOSTAR SC connector C7. Kollmorgen provides a null modem cable in the connector kit for the SERVOSTAR SC.

#### ADD MODEM

- 1. Open the Control Panel from the "Start Menu, Settings, Control Panel".
- 2. Select "Modems".
  - A. If you have modems installed on your PC, the dialog box lists all the installed modems.
  - B. Click Add.... The "Install New Modem" wizard appears.
  - C. Check the box, "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list."
  - D. Click "Next >".
  - E. Click "Have Disk..".
  - F. The list box initially displays C:\. Click "Browse.." to locate the file.
  - G. Change to C:\Program Files\KMTG Motion Suite\API. The file you are looking for is called KMNLMDM.INF.
  - H. Select "KMNLMDM.INF".
  - I. Click "Open".
  - J. Click "OK".

- K. Select "Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection" (or the name of the connection you created).
- L. Click "Next >" to install the serial ports.
- M. Select option "Selected ports".
- N. Select COM1 (or any other available port that you wish to use to connect).
- O. Click "Next >" to get to the finish screen.
- P. Click "Finish". You should now see the new modem.

#### **EDIT MODEM PROPERTIES**

- 1. To edit modem properties, select the modem titled "Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection".
- 2. Click "Properties".
- 3. Go to the "Maximum speed" list box and select "38400".
- 4. Select "Connection".
- 5. Click the "Advanced" button.
- 6. **UNCHECK** box "Use flow control".
- 7. Click OK. You will be back at Modems Properties.
- 8. Click "Close".
- 9. At this point, if Remote Access Service (RAS) has previously been installed, the dialog will say, "Dial-Up Networking needs to be configured". If you see this message, go to Setup Remote Access Service (RAS).

#### ADD NETWORK SERVICES

- 1. If you do not see the message, open the Control Panel by selecting "Start, Settings, Control Panel".
- 2. Open "Network".
- 3. Select tab "Services".
- 4. Click "Add..."
- 5. Select "Remote Access Service" from the list box.
- 6. Click "OK".

#### REMOTE ACCESS SERVICE (RAS)

- 1. If RAS has not been installed on your machine, you will be able to install RAS on your machine. If RAS has been installed on your machine, begin at this screen at step 4.
- 2. The text box displays "c:\i386". This should be set to the default Windows NT location for these files. This may be your CDROM if Windows NT was not installed from the hard drive. If the files have been moved to a different location, enter the path for the new location.

- 3. Click "Continue". The Add RAS Device box appears.
- 4. Open the list box and select "COM1 Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection".
- 5. Click "OK".
- 6. Click "Network..."
- 7. Ensure that box "TCP/IP" is checked. If other boxes are checked, leave them checked.
- 8. Click "OK".
- 9. Click "Configure..."
- 10. Select option "Dial out only".
- 11. Click "OK".
- 12. Click "OK" again in the Remote Access Setup dialog.
- 13. Windows NT requires that you reboot at this point. You must reboot your computer by clicking "Yes". After rebooting continue at Setup Dial-Up Networking.

#### **DIAL-UP NETWORKING**

- 1. To set up Dial-Up Networking, open Dial-Up Networking by selecting "Start, Programs, Accessories, Dial-Up Networking".
- 2. If the phonebook is empty, a dialog appears to tell you this. Otherwise, go to step 7.
- 3. Click "OK". This may launch the "New Phonebook Entry Wizard".
- 4. Enter "SSSC/SSMC connection" for the new phonebook entry. Note, this name needs to be entered exactly as specified ("SSSC/SSMC connection").
- 5. Check the box "I know all about phonebook..."
- 6. Click "Finish". The "New Phonebook Entry" dialog displays.
- 7. Click "New.."
- 8. Select the "Basic" tab.
- 9. Go to the "Entry name" box and enter "SSSC/SSMC connection" (if not already entered). The name must be entered exactly as specified, such as "SSSC/SSMC connection".
- 10. Go to the list box "Dial using".
- 11. Select "Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection".
- 12. Click "Configure".
- 13. Go to the list box "Initial speed (bps)" and select 38400.
- 14. In the "Hardware Features" checkboxes, uncheck all options.
- 15. Click "OK". You return to the previous dialog box.
- 16. Select tab "Server".
- 17. Make sure SLIP: Internet is selected.
- 18. Check "TCP/IP" in "Network protocols".
- 19. Click "TCP/IP Settings.." to edit the TCP/IP settings.

- 20. Enter in "IP address" 91.0.0.1.
- 21. In the checkboxes, uncheck both "Force IP header compression" and "Use default gateway on remote network".
- 22. Click "OK". You will be back at the main screen.
- 23. Select the "Security" tab.
- 24. Select only the option "Accept any authentication including clear text".
- 25. Click "OK".
- 26. Click "Dial".
- 27. It does not matter what entries are present in this dialog. Check the box "Save password" so that you will not be presented with this dialog next time you dial.
- 28. Click "OK". You should connect to the controller. If not, check that you performed these settings correctly.

This completes the serial communications configuration.

#### WINDOWS95

- 1. Make sure you are running Windows95 Version 4.00.095a or higher.
- 2. Connect null modem cable to SC.

#### ADD MODEM

- 1. Open the Control Panel from the Windows Start Menu > Settings > Control Panel.
- 2. Double Click on the icon "Modems".
- 3. Check the box next to "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list" and then click "Next". You will see lists for various modems. Select the type of modem you have on the machine.
- 4. Click on the button "Have Disk" and you are prompted for the location of the modem setup file. You must know where the file, "KMNLMDM.INF", is located.
- 5. You may either enter the exact location of the file in the list box named "Copy manufacturer's files from:" or you can select "Browse" to navigate the directories to your file.
- 6. Locate the setup file named "KMNLMDM.INF" and click "OK".
- 7. Select MC/SC-Host Slip Connection and click Next.
- 8. Install on the COM port to which you are connected and click Next.
- 9. Click OK and close out of Modems.

Now, a dialup networking connection must be set up to connect to the modem.

#### DIALUP NETWORKING

- 1. Select the Windows Start Menu > Programs > Accessories > Dialup Networking. If dialup networking is not listed there, then it is probably not installed on you system. You will need to add dialup networking from the Control Panel > Add Programs > Windows Setup. Please refer to you windows documentation if you need more information on this procedure.
- 2. Double-click on Make New Connection.
- 3. Click "Next". You will now need to enter a phone number (including area code) for this connection.



*Windows95 requires you to enter a phone number but this is not actually used.* 

You may need to enter your area code if this is the first time configuring dialup networking. You will want to use you actual area code in case you configure any other modems in the future.

- 4. Click "Next>". You will be prompted to enter a name for this connection. You may enter any name you like for the name of this connection. If you do enter a different name, then the following instructions that refer to "My Connection" will now refer to your name instead.
- 5. Click "Finish." This completes the setup of the connection, but it still has to be configured.
- 6. Right-click on the Dial-Up Networking connection you just made. When the submenu pops up, you will select "Properties".
- 7. You will see the General Properties for this connection.
- 8. Select the Configure tab.
- 9. Select the COM port and set Maximum speed of 38400.
- 10. In the connections tab, the settings should be:

Data bits:	8
Parity:	None
Stop bits:	1

- 11. Click on the Advanced button.
- 12. UNCHECK "Use Flow Control".
- 13. Click OK.
- 14. Select the Server Types tab.
- 15. Make sure "SLIP: Unix Connection" is displayed.
- 16. Make sure "Log on to network" and "Record a log file for this connection" are unchecked.
- 17. Make sure TCP/IP is checked.
- 18. Click "TCP/IP Settings..."
- 19. Mark "Specify an IP address" and enter "91.0.0.1".
- 20. Mark "Server assigned name server addresses".
- 21. Uncheck "Use IP header compression".
- 22. Uncheck "Use default gateway on remote network."

- 23. Click OK to return to the previous screen.
- 24. You are finished creating the new dialup connection. Click OK.

Make sure you are connected to your controller using a NULL modem cable. You are ready to begin communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC.

### WINDOWS98

- 1. Make sure you are running Windows98 Version 4.10 or higher.
- 2. Connect null modem cable to SC.

#### ADD MODEM

- 1. Open the Control Panel from the Windows Start Menu > Settings > Control Panel.
- 2. Double Click on the icon "Modems".
- 3. Click on the button "Add".
- 4. Make sure your modem is turned on.
- 5. Quit any programs that might be using the modem.
- 6. Check the box next to "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list" and then click "Next".
- 7. In the "Manufacturers:" box, select Standard Modem Types.
- 8. In the "Models" box, select the Dial-Up Networking between 2 PCs.
- 9. Click on the button "Have Disk" and you will be prompted for the location of the modem setup file.
- 10. Select "Browse" to locate the file.
- 11. Now locate the setup file named "KMNLMDM.INF". This should be found at C:\Program Files\KMTG Motion Suite\API.
- 12. Click "OK" to install the drivers for the dial-up connection.
- 13. Make sure "MC/SC-Host SLIP connection" is selected.
- 14. Click "Next".
- 15. Select the COM port on which you would like to install the modem. Please select the COM port you will be using (most likely COM1).
- 16. Click "Next".
- 17. You are finished setting up the modem. Select "Finish". The modem is now displayed.
- 18. Select "Close".

Now a Dial-Up Networking connection needs to be setup to connect to the modem.

#### DIALUP NETWORKING

1. Select the Windows Start Menu > Programs > Accessories > Communications > Dialup Networking.



If Dial-Up Networking is not listed, it is probably not installed on you system. You will need to add Dial-Up Networking from the Control Panel > Add Programs > Windows Setup. Please refer to you windows documentation if you need more information on this procedure.

- 2. Double click on "Make New Connection". The wizard is displayed to assist you in configuring a dialup connection.
- 3. You may enter any name you like for the name of this connection. If you do enter a different name, the following instructions that refer to "My Connection" will now refer to the name you provide for this connection instead. Make sure "MC/SC-Host SLIP Connection" is displayed in the list box titled "Select a device:".
- 4. Click "Next".
- 5. Windows 98 requires you to enter a phone number but this is not actually used. Please enter any number.



If this is the first time configuring Dial-Up Networking, you will want to use your actual area code in case you configure additional modems in the future.

- 6. Click "Next".
- 7. You are finished creating the new dial-up connection. Select "Finish". Now, you need to manually configure the settings specific to this modem.
- 8. If Dial-Up Networking is not still open, you will need to open it.
- 9. From the Dial-Up Networking window, right click on the icon "My Connection" and select "Properties".
- 10. The configuration dialog is displayed.
- 11. You will not need to configure anything on the "General", "Scripting" or "Multilink" tabs.
- 12. Select the Configure tab.
- 13. Select the COM port and set Maximum speed of 38400.
- 14. In the connections tab, the settings should be:

Data bits:	8
Parity:	None
Stop bits:	1

- 15. Click on the Advanced button.
- 16. **UNCHECK**"Use Flow Control".
- 17. Select the "Server Types" tab and proceed to the next step.
- 18. Make sure SLIP: Unix Connection is selected for "Type of Dial-Up Server."
- 19. Make sure only "TCP/IP" is checked.

- 20. Select the "TCP/IP Settings" button.
- 21. Select "Specify an IP address" and enter "91.0.0.1".
- 22. Make sure "Server assigned name server addresses" is selected.
- 23. Uncheck "Use IP header compression".
- 24. Uncheck "Use default gateway on remote network".
- 25. Click "OK" to return to the previous options page.
- 26. Click "OK" again.
- 27. You are finished configuring the dial-up connection.

Make sure you are connected to your controller using a NULL modem cable. You are ready to begin communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC.

#### WINDOWS2000

- 1. Make sure you are running Windows2000 Version 5.00.2195 or higher.
- 2. Connect null modem cable to the SERVOSTAR SC COM1 port, connector C7. Kollmorgen provides a null modem cable in the connector kit for the SERVOSTAR SC.

#### ADD MODEM

- 1. Open the Control Panel (Start>Settings>Control Panel).
- 2. Double Click on the icon "Phone and Modem Options".
- 3. Click the "Modems" tab.
- 4. Click "Add". The new modem wizard is displayed to help you configure the modem.
- 5. Quit any programs that might be using the modem.
- 6. Check the box next to "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list".
- 7. Click "Next".
- 8. Click on the button "Have Disk".
- 9. You will be prompted for the location of the modem setup file.
- 10. Select "Browse".
- 11. Locate the setup file named "KMNLMDM.INF". This should be found at C:\Program Files\KMTG Motion Suite\API.
- 12. Click "OK" to install the drivers for the dial-up connection.
- 13. Make sure "Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection" is selected.
- 14. Click "Next".
- 15. Select the COM port.
- 16. Click "Next".

- 17. Click "Yes" and continue the installation.
- 18. You are finished setting up the modem. Select "Finish". The modem is now displayed in the dialog box.
- 19. Select "OK".

A Dial-Up Networking connection needs to be setup to connect to the modem.

#### NETWORK ADAPTER AND PROTOCOL INSTALLATION

Microsoft Dial-Up Adapter and Microsoft TCP/IP protocol must be installed. If they are not installed:

- 1. Open the Control Panel (Start>Settings>Control Panel).
- 2. Open "Network and Dial-up Connections". Microsoft Dial-Up Adapter and Microsoft TCP/IP protocol must be installed. If not, they must be added.
- 3. Click "Add Network Components".
- 4. Check the "Networking services" box.
- 5. Click "Details".
- 6. Check both boxes.
- 7. Click "ok".
- 8. Click "Next>".
- 9. You may be asked to insert the Windows2000 disk. Be sure you have these on hand or be sure you have a system administrator with you who will have these.
- 10. After installation is complete, restart the computer.

# NETWORK AND DIAL-UP CONNECTIONS CREATION AND CONFIGURATION

 Select "Network and Dial-up connections" (Start>Programs>Accessories>Communications> Network and Dial-up connections).



If "Network and Dial-up connections" is not listed, it is probably not installed on you system. You will need to add "Network and Dial-up connections" from the Control Panel. Refer to your Windows documentation if you need more information on this procedure.

- 2. Double click on "Make New Connection" and click "Next>".
- 3. Check "Dial-up to private network" and click "next".
- 4. Fill in 111 as the Phone number and click "Next>".
- 5. Check "For all users" and then click "Next>".
- 6. Choose a name for you're connection and click "Finish".
- 7. Click "Properties".

- 8. Under the "Networking" tab enter "SLIP:Unix Connection" and check all the boxes under it (if "Internet Protocol(TCP/IP)" or "Client for Microsoft Networks" don't exist install them from the windows 2000 installation disk.)
- 9. Click "Properties".
- 10. Fill-in the IP address "91.0.0.1" and then click "OK".
- 11. Click "OK" twice.



If this is the first time configuring Dial-Up Networking, you will want to use your actual area code in case you configure additional modems in the future.

You are finished creating and configuring the new dial-up connection. Now, you need to click the "Dial" button to connect to the controller.

# **Communication Start Up**

Now that you have installed **MOTIONLINK** and BASIC Moves Development Studio or Motion Suite, and have configured the appropriate communication (either Ethernet (C6 connector) or serial (C7 connector)), it is time to see if all this works! Choose the appropriate communication steps below to verify that you can communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC.

# **BASIC** Moves Development Studio and Ethernet

Be sure you are connected to the Ethernet port (C6 on the SERVOSTAR SC). Open BASIC Moves Development Studio you installed on your PC.

- 1. Select "Ethernet"
- 2. Click OK. A list of available devices is displayed.
- 3. Select the appropriate device.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. If you click "Yes" at this prompt, you are walked through the steps of creating a new project. If you select "No" will see a blank project screen.
- 6. You are finished. You should be communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC.

Once you have "dialed up" the SERVOSTAR SC, the communication connection stays alive (although you can turn it off if you wish) until you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC. You can also use the dialog window to "Hang up" the connection or you can click on the Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC.

While the connection is active, you can repeatedly enter and leave BASIC Moves Development Studios without disturbing the connection. If you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC, you disconnect the communication. To communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, you must reconnect using the steps outlined above.

If you have problems, verify that you have correctly followed all the steps and wired the controller properly. If you are still experiencing problems, contact your local sales representative. If you do not know who your local sales representative is, contact Kollmorgen at 1-800-777-3786.

# **BASIC Moves Development Studio and Serial** Communication

Be sure you are connected to the serial port (C7 on the SERVOSTAR SC).

#### Be sure you have NOT connected to C1.

- 1. Select Start, Programs, Accessories, and Dial-Up Networking
- 2. Select the connection you created ("SSSC/SSMC connection" in our example).
- 3. A terminal window appears.
- 4. Click "Continue."
- 5. You should see a Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC to show you have an active connection.
- 6. Open BASIC Moves Development Studio. You must choose the type of communication to use.
- 7. Select "Serial Port."
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. You must decide if you wish to begin a new project .
- 10. If you click "Yes" at this prompt, you are walked through the steps of creating a new project. If you select "No" at this prompt, you are taken to thea blank project screen.
- 11. You are finished. You should be communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC.

Once you have "dialed up" the SERVOSTAR SC, the communication connection stays alive (although you can turn it off if you wish) until you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC. You can also use the dialog window to "Hang up" the connection or you can click on the Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC.

While the connection is active, you can repeatedly enter and leave BASIC Moves Development Studios without disturbing the connection. If you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC, you disconnect the communication. To communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, you must reconnect using the steps outlined above.

If you have problems, verify that you have correctly followed all the steps and wired the controller properly. If you are still experiencing problems, contact your local sales representative. If you do not know who your local sales representative is, contact Kollmorgen at 1-800-777-3786.

# MOTIONLINK and Ethernet

Be sure you are connected to the Ethernet port (C6 on the SERVOSTAR SC). Open **MOTIONLINK** you installed on your PC.

- 1. Select "Yes." You will see the **MOTIONLINK** Start screen.
- 2. Click "Com Setup."
- 3. In the **MOTIONLINK** Communications Status section of this screen, you will select "Interactive" and "Ethernet".
- 4. Click "Scan for Controllers." A screen is displayed with the available devices.
- 5. Highlight the appropriate one.
- 6. Click "Connect Controller."
- 7. You will see a screen letting you know when you have successfully connected to the SERVOSTAR SC.
- 8. You will return to the previous screen showing the active connection.
- 9. Highlight the active connection.
- 10. Click OK. You will be at the main **MOTIONLINK** screen.
- 11. From here, begin by clicking "Start." Follow the information outlined in the **MOTIONLINK** Startup Wizard.



# In the MOTIONLINK terminal window, you cannot use the mouse to place the cursor and then change text.

Once you have "dialed up" the SERVOSTAR SC, the communication connection stays alive (although you can turn it off if you wish) until you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC. You can also use the dialog window to "Hang up" the connection or you can click on the Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC.

While the connection is active, you can repeatedly enter and leave **MOTIONLINK** without disturbing the connection. If you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC, you disconnect the communication. To communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, you must reconnect using the steps outlined above.

If you have problems, verify that you have correctly followed all the steps and wired the controller properly. If you are still experiencing problems, contact your local sales representative. If you do not know who your local sales representative is, contact Kollmorgen at 1-800-777-3786.

# MOTIONLINK and Serial Communication

Be sure you are connected to the serial port (C7 on the SERVOSTAR SC).

#### Be sure you have NOT connected to C1.

- 1. Open **MOTIONLINK** you installed on your PC.
- 2. Select "Yes." You will see the **MOTIONLINK** Start screen.
- 3. Click "Com Setup." You will see the Communications Setup screen.
- 4. Click OK. You will now be at the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.
- 5. From here, begin by clicking "Start." Follow the information outlined in the **MOTIONLINK** Startup Wizard.



# In the MOTIONLINK terminal window, you cannot use the mouse to place the cursor and then change text.

Once you have "dialed up" the SERVOSTAR SC, the communication connection stays alive (although you can turn it off if you wish) until you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC. You can also use the dialog window to "Hang up" the connection or you can click on the Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC.

While the connection is active, you can repeatedly enter and leave BASIC Moves Development Studios without disturbing the connection. If you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC, you disconnect the communication. To communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, you must reconnect using the steps outlined above.

If you have problems, verify that you have correctly followed all the steps and wired the controller properly. If you are still experiencing problems, contact your local sales representative. If you do not know who your local sales representative is, contact Kollmorgen at 1-800-777-3786.

# MotionSuite

At the main MotionSuite screen, you will see several options on the left-hand side. This section describes these options.

# STEP BY STEP STARTUP

If you are completely unfamiliar with how to startup, these steps can be very useful. Once you click Step by Step Startup, you get the first dialog box that tells you to choose the communication type. There is a red line going to where you make that choice on this screen. Once you choose the type of communication, the second step is displayed. As you can see, these steps make startup very easy for the user.

# **IP POOL EDIT FOR ETHERNET**

This is where you will set up the IP Address and subnet mask when using the SERVOSTAR SC controller.

### SC REFERENCE MANUAL

Clicking this option displays the SERVOSTAR SC Reference Manual in PDF format.

### SC USER'S MANUAL

Clicking this option displays the SERVOSTAR SC User's Manual in PDF format.

### SC INSTALL MANUAL

Clicking this option displays the SERVOSTAR SC Installation Manual in PDF format.

### MOTION SUITE HELP

Clicking this option displays the Help file for MotionSuite. It covers information about Motor Selection & Drive Tuning (**MOTIONLINK**) as well as Program Development (BASIC Moves Development Studio).

### ABOUT MOTIONSUITE

Clicking this option displays the version number and copyright information. If you click System Info...., you can see the information about the system. Close this window to return to the About MotionSuite window. Click OK to return to the main MotionSuite window.

# MotionSuite and Ethernet Communication

Be sure you are connected to the Ethernet port (C6 on the SERVOSTAR SC). Open Motion Sute installed on your PC. You will see the Welcome screen.

- 1. Click the Ethernet radio button.
- 2. MotionSuite will search for controllers and if found, displays the name in white with a black background. Doubleclick the controller name.
- 3. The screen will now show the Current state: Connected Ethernet. You can now select the motor and tune the drive by clicking Motor Selection & Drive Tuning (**MOTIONLINK**). You can also develop programs by clicking Program Development (BASIC Moves Development Studio).

# MotionSuite and Serial Communication

Be sure you are connected to the Ethernet port (C6 on the SERVO**STAR** SC). Open Motion Sute installed on your PC. You will see the Welcome screen. Whether you are Offline or connected, you can access the options on the left-side of this screen.

- 1. Click the Serial radio button.
- 2. Click SC Connection on the left side of this screen.
- 3. Click Connect!
- 4. Click Cancel at the Connect To screen.
- 5. Your user name and password will be verified in the background.
- 6. Click Continue at the Terminal Screen window.
- 7. A screen appears where you can fill in the SLIP Connection IP Address. Fill in the appropriate address.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. A dialog box comes up to tell you that your Serial connection is established. Click OK.
- 10. The main MotionSuite screen now displays Serial in white text with a black background. Doubleclick on this.
- 11. Now, the screen shows the Current State to be Connected Serial (slip). You are connected to the controller and communicating. You can select Program Development (BASIC Moves) to begin programming or Motor Selection & Drive Tuning (**MOTIONLINK**) to configure your drive.

# SERVOSTAR SC SETUP

Both MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning and **MOTIONLINK** are used to configure the SERVOSTAR SC controller. To use **MOTIONLINK**, go to Start/Programs/KMTG Motion Suite and select SERVOSTAR **MOTIONLINK** from the menu (or click on the **MOTIONLINK** icon if loaded on the desktop). To use MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning, click on the MotionSuite icon (if on the desktop) or go to Start/Programs/KMTG Motion Suite and select MotionSuite from the menu. When MotionSuite opens, choose the communication type, establish communication, and click on Motor Selection & Drive Tuning.

# **Power-Up Sequence**

Review and be completely familiar with this section before applying power to the system.



To get motion from the SERVOSTAR SC, be sure you have enabled both the 24V input on C3 and the motion connector on C9. Otherwise, there will be no motion.

In order to enable the SERVOSTAR SC, you must have enabled both the 24V input on C3 and the motion connector on C9. Additionally, you must enter:

SYS.MOTION=1
SYS.CONMODE=2

Upon powering up, the SERVOSTAR SC controller performs a series of self-tests. If the Status Display flashes "S", no errors were found and the EEPROM has loaded its variable parameters (or loaded with default values, in case of invalid EEPROM data) into RAM. Flashing "S" means that the SERVOSTAR SC is in Configuration mode (SYS.CONMODE = 1) The user application may set SYS.CONMODE to working mode (2) and enable the SERVOSTAR SC.

If the SERVOSTAR SC is not configured with a particular motor, the display will flash a minus one (-1), indicating that you must enter SERVOSTAR SC, motor, and application variable parameters.

# **Enabling the System**



Take care when applying power to the SERVOSTAR SC. It is factory configured to enable upon application of power. Verify that the hardware Remote Enable (REMOTE) enable switch is disabled.

The SERVOSTAR SC enable logic is based on the following variable switches and flags:

SYS.MOTION = 1

If the SERVOSTAR SC is free of Errors and "Remote Motion" digital input is "1", SYS.MOTION gets "0" if there is unhandled error or "Remote Motion" is "0". Errors may be intercepted by one of three mechanisms Try, OnError, or OnSystemError.

ServoErrorNumber = 0	If there are no permanent errors (Invalid Configuration, Over Temp, Over Current, etc.). Clear Servo Error by toggling either SYS.MOTION or Remote Motion input.
SYS.Conmode= 2	SERVOSTAR SC can be enabled only in when SYS.CONMODE = 2 (working mode). CONMODE = 1 is for configuration purposes.



Use ServoError and ServoWarning queries to get human-readable error/warning description.



State of "Remote motion" input can be read via SYS.DIN.1

The SERVOSTAR SC is ready to be enabled if all the conditions below are met:

- 1. SYS.MOTION = 1
- 2. ServoError = 0
- 3. SYS.CONMODE = 2
- 4. Remote = 1 (indicates the status of the Hardware Remote enable line on the C3 connector)
- 5. DipEn = 1 (indicates the state of the DIP enable/disable switch (#8))
- 6. System may be enabled with command EN=1

The CONTROLLEROK - SYS.MOTION=1 & (SERVOERROR=0) switch indicates the status of the SERVOSTAR SC faults.

The READY - CONTROLLEROK & (CONMODE=2) flag that indicates the SERVOSTAR SC is free of faults and ready to hardware enable.

The ACTIVE - READY & REMOTE & DIPEN & SWEN flag indicates that the SERVOSTAR SC is enabled.

Where SWEN indicates the software enabled.



*Remote* = 1 *is necessary, but not sufficient to enable the SERVOSTAR SC. To enable the SERVOSTAR SC, you must use software enable (EN=1).* 

If the SERVOSTAR SC will not enable, you can check the state of the switches and flags by clicking the "Status" button in the upper right-hand corner of the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.
# **Configuring the Drive**

**MOTIONLINK** or MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning gives you three methods to configure the SERVOSTAR SC. The first uses a Startup Wizard that is the easiest and most highly recommended approach. Its main purpose is for initial startups. The second approach allows you to more indirectly perform the same configuration as the first using the main **MOTIONLINK** or MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning screen. This method is most convenient when corrections to an existing configuration are needed. The third method uses the Terminal Mode screen to directly set (or monitor) values for the same variables and commands the other two methods configure through a friendlier user interface.

## **MOTIONLINK Startup Wizard**

The **MOTIONLINK** Startup Wizard is accessed either directly through **MOTIONLINK** or through MotionSuite once communication with the controller is established following the steps outlined above. For more details (including graphics), refer to Appendix B.



Should you deactivate this screen, it can be reactivated by going to the Main *MOTIONLINK* screen, pulling down the Configuration menu, and selecting the New Drive (123) option.

- 1. Click Start. A dialog box is displayed describing the Drive Configuration settings required.
- 2. Read the entire text. When finished, click OK.
- 3. Set the Bus Voltage.
- 4. Verify the DIP switch settings and update if changes are made.
- 5. Verify the Serial Number.
- 6. Enable the Axis.
- 7. Save.
- 8. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. A dialog box displays describing the next screen. When you have finished reading the contents, click OK.
- 11. Configure the motor. Verify all settings. Save any changes. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.



For a configured SERVOSTAR SC, a "From Drive" button is provided to retrieve the motor data already in the SERVOSTAR SC. Retrieving this data does not erase it from the SERVOSTAR SC.



If the motor cannot be found in the database, click on the User Define tab. Contact the Kollmorgen Customer Support Network for detailed instructions.

- 12. Click Next.
- 13. Be sure you read the information required for the Feedback Configuration. When finished, click OK.
- 14. Make any changes that are required. Save your changes. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.
- 15. Click Next.
- 16. Read the Operation Mode Configuration dialog box. When finished, click OK.
- 17. Here, you can change to Digital Velocity, Digital Position, or Analog Velocity. Save your changes. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.
- 18. Click Next.
- 19. Read the dialog box for Tuning the Drive. When finished, click OK.
- 20. In the Setup <u>R</u>ecord tab, verify the settings. Enter the Sample Rate and number of Samples.
- 21. Select the Trigger Mode.
- 22. Select the Pre-Trigger Position.
- 23. Select the Channels.
- 24. Click the Setup <u>M</u>otion tab.
- 25. Select if you wish the command to Jog, Step, or Move.
- 26. Set the Smooth factor.
- 27. Click the <u>V</u>el. Gains tab.
- 28. Select the Active Control Loop.
- 29. Set the PDFF Loop Gain.
- 30. Set the PDFF Loop Integral.
- 31. Select the Feedforward Ratio.
- 32. Determine if Velocity Feedback Low Pass Filter is Off or On.
- 33. Click the <u>P</u>osn. Gains tab.
- 34. Set the Derivative Gain.

- 35. Set the Proportional Gain.
- 36. Set the Acceleration Feedforward #1.
- 37. Set the Integral Gain.
- 38. Set the Velocity Feedforward Ratio.
- 39. Set the Acceleration Feedforward #2.
- 40. Click the <u>F</u>ilters tab.
- 41. Select the Filter Mode.
- 42. Set the First Low Pass Filter (Hz).
- 43. Set the Second Low Pass Filter (Hz).
- 44. Set the Notch Filter Center Freq. (Hz).
- 45. Set the Notch Filter Bandwidth (Hz).
- 46. Click the Auto <u>T</u>une tab.
- 47. Set the Tune Bandwidth.
- 48. Set the Tune Direction.
- 49. Set the Tune Speed (RPM).
- 50. Click the <u>Save/Print</u> tab.
- 51. Load the Plot.
- 52. Save the Plot.
- 53. Save the Variables.
- 54. Print.
- 55. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.
- 56. You are prompted to save the configuration settings. If you click OK, these settings will be available on the next powerup. If you click Cancel, these settings are not saved.
- 57. Click Next.
- 58. You are prompted to backup your drive's configuration to disk. Click OK to proceed. Click Cancel if you do NOT want to backup.
- 59. You are finished configuring the drive. Click Exit or GO to go to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

### Main MOTIONLINK Screen

In viewing the top toolbar of this screen, you can see you can reach the same areas that are discussed in the Wizard screen.

#### COMMAND GENERATOR

By clicking on the Command Generator button, you can edit Moves, Homing, and Accel/Decel Settings.

The Moves tab is shown first. Here, you can set the Target Position and Move Velocity. You can set the Incremental Move Distance and Move Velocity. You can view the Status and Position. You can set the "In Position" Threshold.

In the Homing tab, you can set the Homing Velocity and Type. You can set IN1, IN2, and IN3 functions.

In the Accel/Decel Settings tab, you can set the Acceleration, Deceleration, Active Disable Deceleration Rate, Active Disable Speed Threshold, and Active Disable Delay Time.

Save your settings. Click Close.

#### POSITION

When you click the Position button, you can edit the Position Loop and Position Limit Settings.

The Position Loop allows you to set the Vel Feedforward, Acc. Feedforward #1, Acc. Feedforward #2, Derivitave Gain, Proportional Gain, Integral Gain, Input Limiter, and Output Limiter. Save your changes.

The Position Limits allows you to set the Limit Sw Function, Travel Limit Decel Rate, Travel Direction Sense, Position Limit Values, and Position Error Settings. Save your settings.

Clicking Close returns you to the Main MOTIONLINK screen.

#### VELOCITY

When you click the Velocity button, you can edit the Velocity Loop and Settings.

The <u>Std.</u> Pole Placement tab allows you to set the Load Inertia Ratio (%), Bandwidth (Hz), and Tracking Factor. You can also turn the Low Pass Filter off or on and select Low or High Frequency. Save any changes made. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

The <u>V</u>elocity Limits tab allows you to set the Overspeed Limit, User Velocity Limit, and Velocity Override. It also allows you to view MBEMF, MSPEED, System Max, Encoder Max, and VMAX. Be sure to save any changes made. Clicking Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

The PI Control tab allows you to set the Velocity Integrator and Velocity Gain. You can also turn the Low Pass Filter off or on. Save any changes made. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

The P<u>D</u>FF Control tab allows you to set the Feedforward Ratio, Velocity Integrator, and Velocity Gain. You can also turn the Low Pass Filter off or on. Save any changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

The <u>A</u>dvanced Pole Placement tab allows you to load the design from the drive or enter values for the CONCAD frequency analysis system and send it to the drive. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

The <u>F</u>ilters tab allows you to select no filter, one first order low pass filter, two first order low pass filters, or a notch filter. If you select one or two first order low pass filters, you can also set the frequency for the filter(s). If you select notch filter, you can set the Notch Filter Center Freq. And Notch Filter Bandwidth. Save any changes made. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

#### CURRENT

When you click the Current button, you can edit the Current Loop and Settings.

On the <u>C</u>urrent Limits tab, you can set the Application Continuous current, Application Peak current, User Limits, Drive and Motor Peak and Continuous currents, as well as set the Drive Foldback. Save your changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

The Current <u>L</u>oop tab allows you to set the Gravity Constant and Coulomb Friction Constant. Save your changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

#### **RESOLVER FEEDBACK**

The Resolver Feedback button displays the information on the feedback device. Be sure to save any changes you make. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

### SET MOTOR

The Set Motor button allows you to view and edit the motor properties. This screen allows you to select the Motor Family, add a Motor Description, choose the feedback type, or create a custom User Defined motor with the correct feedback type. Be sure to save all changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

### SYSTEM I/O

The System I/O button allows you access to the Drive I/O settings, Thermostat, and Travel Limits.

The <u>D</u>rive I/O tab allows you to set IN1, IN2, IN3, and 01. Save your changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

The <u>Thermostat</u> tab allows you to set the Thermostat Mode, Thermostat Fault Delay Time, and Thermostat Type. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

The Travel Limits tab allows you to set the Travel Limit Switches, Maximum Position Error, enable or disable the Travel Limit Function, set the Active Disable Deceleration Rate, and Position Command Travel Direction Sense. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

#### EXIT

Click Exit to exit out of MOTIONLINK.

# **Dumb Terminal Support (C8 Connector)**

A dumb-terminal is an ASCII terminal connected with RS-232 connection via COM2 (C8 connector). The communication protocol used for the connection with an ASCII terminal, is simply an ASCII protocol, where there is no error recovery and no frame-communication. The transmitted data does not have any meaning in terms of direct control of the SERVOSTAR SC.

The dumb-terminal gives the user the basic features of serial data communication that is not limited to a specific communication protocol. This enables the user to use any serial protocol through a SERVOSTAR SC application.

During system boot, the SERVOSTAR SC sends status messages through COM2. When using COM2 for an ASCII terminal, the transmission of status messages can be disabled with:

DISABLING STATUS MESSAGES DIP Switch #10: Close (normal state) bypass printing Open (debug state) with prints.

# **Generate Programs**

MotionSuite's Program Development or BASIC Moves Development Studio are used to generate programs that operate the SERVOSTAR SC. Begin by connecting to the SERVOSTAR SC either serially using Dial Up Networking or with Ethernet.

# **BASIC** Moves

Now that the installation of BASIC Moves is complete, you can run the program. Connect via Ethernet or serially. Double-click the BASIC Moves desktop icon on your desktop. You can use this icon to start BASIC Moves. You may also use your start menu to start the program.

### MotionSuite's Program Development

Now that the installation of MotionSuite is complete, you can run the program. Connect via Ethernet or serially. Double-click the MotionSuite desktop icon on your desktop. You may also use your start menu to start the program. Click on Program Development

### Main Screen

Once the program has initialized, you will see the main application window. To test the operation of the software with the SERVOSTAR SC, open a terminal window by selecting: View, Debug Windows, Terminal Window.

Click Enter. Another prompt is shown if BASIC Moves Development Studio is properly communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC. Otherwise, an error message is displayed.

This software is used with the SERVOSTAR SC to program the controllers and operate the motors. Refer to the SERVOSTAR SC User Manual and the SERVOSTAR Reference Manual for additional information.

# Sending and Retrieving System Data

The following chart shows the flow of data between the PC and the SERVOSTAR SC. When logic power is applied to the SERVOSTAR SC, it loads the variable parameters stored in EEPROM into the non-volatile memory (EEPROM or NVRAM) for fast and easy access. You can read (and write) these variable parameters to (and from) the PC by one of several methods described in the **MOTIONLINK** Initial Startup section.



The PC transmits serial data to the SERVO**STAR** SC and stores it in dynamic RAM. However, any variable data that is changed from the PC is lost when logic power is lost, if it is not saved into non-volatile EEPROM.

If you configure the same system on similar applications, the variables can be saved on disk in an .SSV file for convenient downloading into other SERVOSTAR SCs.

### **OPEN SERIAL PORT**

Configuration of the serial port is done using the OPEN command. The port properties that can be set are:

BaudRate - sets the baud rate of the device to the specified value.

Parity – enables/disables parity detection. If enabled, the parity may be odd or even.

DataBits - sets the number of data bits.

**StopBit** - defines the number of stop bits that are used.



#### CHANGE COMMUNICATION PARAMETERS

To change the communication parameters, the serial port should be closed and reopened using the new parameters.

#### **RECEIVE DATA**

The dumb-terminal receives strings using the INPUT\$ command. To check if data is ready at the input buffer, use the *LOC* command.

When calling the INPUT\$ command, the system does not wait for data. An error is returned if no data is available at the port.

#### EXAMPLES

X\$ = INPUT\$(100, #1)

Reads 100 chars from device #1 and assigns them to string variable X\$.

Test $\$  = INPUT $\$ (1, #1)

Reads 1 char from device #1 and assigns it to string variable Test\$ X\$ = INPUT\$(LOC(1), #1)

Reads all the characters waiting at the input buffer #1 and assigns them to string variable X\$.

#### SEND DATA

Sending data is done using the PRINT # command.

#### **EXAMPLE**

Nm\$ = "Penn, Will" Age = 25 PRINT #1, Nm\$, Dept\$, Level, Age

Outputs

Penn, Will 25

#### CLOSE CONNECTION

Closing the connection is done using the CLOSE command.

# TUNING

# PDFF Compensation with Proportional Position Loop

This section details a drive tuning procedure for motor and load using the PDFF tuning algorithm that has been found to be useful in most applications. Tuning is accomplished using either **MOTIONLINK** or MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning.

This tuning method utilizes a **PDFF Velocity loop** with proportional, integral, and feed forward properties and **Position Loop** with proportional and feed forward properties.



The SERVOSTAR SC supports other velocity loop tuning algorithms. Contact your local sales representative for details.

# **Tuning in Zones**



Improper tuning can harm people and damage machines.

### Zone 1

Set Velocity Loop Proportional Gain

- 1. In **MOTIONLINK**'s or MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning's Main Screen:
  - A. Set Opmode to Digital Velocity (Opmode =0).
  - B. Set configuration mode to ConMode 2
- 2. Go to the MOTIONLINK's or MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning's Scope Screen.
- 3. In the Vel Gain tab:
  - A. First set the Active Control Loop for velocity to PDFF control (COMPMODE=1).
  - B. Set the starting values for PDFF velocity loop properties
    - a. Set PDFF loop gain to a low value (KV<500).
    - b. Set PDFF integral gain (KVI=0).
    - c. Set feed forward ratio (KVFR=1000).
- 4. In the Filter tab, turn all filters off (FILTMODE = 0).
- 5. Turn off COMPFILT. To do this, you will have to go to a terminal screen and set COMPFILT=0.

- 6. In the Setup Motion and Setup Record tabs generate a step command with the maximum amplitude possible without saturating the controller. Actual Motor speed (verses time) can be displayed by selecting "V" in one of the three Channels in the Setup Record screen.
- 7. Enable the drive.
- 8. Use the Move, Record, and Plot button to record to display performance on the Scoop screen. Repeat this step to observe performance each time a gain is changed (1 second step from 0 to 500 rpm). Be sure there is no saturation.
- 9. Raise the PDFF loop gain (KV) for square response.
- 10. Determine how it is working.
  - A. If there is noise:
    - a. Implement mechanical cures, such as removing backlash.
    - b. Increase resolution of feedback device.
    - c. Improve wiring. Refer to CE Filtering techniques of this manual.
    - d. Use a low-pass filter (FILTMODE = 1 or 2). This is set in the Filters tab. Use FILTMODE = 2 and keep both filters set the same.
    - e. Lower the PDFF loop gain (KV).
  - B. If there is low-frequency resonance:
    - a. Implement mechanical cures (stiffening the machine, adding mechanical damping, reducing load inertia, increasing motor inertia, and increasing the gear ratio).
    - b. Lower the PDFF loop gain (KV).
  - C. If there is high-frequency resonance:
    - a. Use notch filter (FILTMODE = 3). Set in the Filter tab.
    - b. Use a low-pass filter (FILTMODE = 1 or 2). This is set in the Filters tab. Use FILTMODE = 2 and keep both filters set the same.
    - c. Implement mechanical cures (stiffening the machine, adding mechanical damping, reducing load inertia, increasing motor inertia, and increasing the gear ratio).
    - d. Lower the PDFF loop gain (KV).
  - D. If it works, go to Zone 2.

### Zone 2

Set the velocity loop integrator gain (KVI) and optimize the velocity feed-forward ratio (KVFR) for fast vs. stiff response. Adjust velocity loop integrator (KVI) for fast or stiff response to a DC load:

- 1. If very fast:
  - A. Set velocity feed-forward ratio (KVFR=1000).
  - B. Raise integral gain (KVI) for 5 10% overshoot.
  - C. Continue to Zone 3.

- 2. If mid-range:
  - A. Set velocity feed-forward ratio (KVFR=650).
  - B. Raise integral gain (KVI) for 5 10% overshoot.
  - C. Continue to Zone 3.
- 3. If very stiff in response to a DC load:
  - A. Set velocity feed-forward ratio (KVFR=400).
  - B. Raise integral gain (KVI) for 5 10% overshoot.
  - C. Continue to Zone 3.

### Zone 3

Tune the Position Loop: Set proportional gain (GP) then adjust the position loop feed forward gains (GPVFR and GPAFR2) to reduce following error.

- 1. Go back to **MOTIONLINK**'s or MotionSuite's Motor Selection & Drive Tuning's Main Screen and set the Opmode to position loop (OPMODE=8).
- 2. Return to the Scope screen.
- 3. In the Posn Gains tab set the starting values for position loop properties
  - A. Set proportional gain to low value (GP)
  - B. Set velocity feed-forward gain (GPVFR= 0).
  - C. Set acceleration feed-forward #1gain (GPAFR=0).
  - D. Set acceleration feed-forward #2 gain (GPAFR2=0)
  - E. Set integral gain (GPI=0).
  - F. Set derivative gain (GPD=0).
- 4. Generate a trapezoidal motion profile using the MOVE command with acceleration (ACC, AMAX) and deceleration (DEC, AMAX) equal to the maximum of the application. Ensure the system is not saturated. This means the commanded current should not be clamped at the peak (at least not for more than a few milliseconds).
- 5. Set the position gain (GP) for square wave performance.
- 6. Determine how it is working.
  - A. If there is ripple in the command response: It can be reduced with high values of velocity feed-forward (GPVFR) and acceleration feed-forward (GPAFR2) plus reducing the velocity loop integral gain (KVI) and position loop proportional gain (GP), but at the expense of stiffness.
  - B. If there is too much following error:
  - C. Set velocity feed-forward (GPVFR=1000).
  - D. Raise acceleration feed-forward (GPAFR2) to eliminate overshoot.
  - E. Step velocity feed-forward (GPVFR) up 10%.
  - F. Raise acceleration feed-forward (GPAFR2) again.
  - G. Repeat steps 3 and 4 above as necessary.

- H. If it is too loose: Return to Zone 2 and lower KVFR.
- I. Works well you are finished!

This procedure is outlined in the following two flowcharts.



Improper tuning can harm people and damage equipment!





# **GETTING STARTED PROGRAM**

After the SERVOSTAR SC has been setup for the motor and system, the following program can be used to enable the drive and observe motion.

```
Check Speed and Distance to verify within machine limitations.
               ' Program :
'Author :
' Description :
' Input parameter(s) :
' Output parameter(s) :
' Global & System variable(s) :
' History of modification(s) :
REM ------
'Getting Started Program
'Short move at 50 rpm
'WARNING - Check Speed and Distance to verify they are within machine limits
REM ------
Program
               'Attach motion to this task
  Attach
  Call AxisSetup 'Set up all axes
  if en<>1 then 'Set conmode = 2 and enable drive
  Sys.conmode=2
  en=1
  End if
  Move 2000 'Move 2000 counts-this may be small move-make larger if needed
    while IsMoving > 0 'Wait until motion is complete
         Sleep 2
    End While
    en = 0 ' Disable drive
    Detach ' Detach from axis
    Print "Sample Program Completed" ' Print to Message Log in Basic Moves
End Program
```

```
Sub AxisSetup' Axis Setup Subroutineen = 0' Disable DriveVCruise = 50' Set velocity at 50 rpmPEMax = 30000' Set max position error to 30000 countsAbsolute = 0' Set motion type to incremental
```

End Sub

# **CONTROLLER OPERATION**

# **Status Display**

The SERVOSTAR SC has a seven-segment indicator (called a Status Display) that indicates four types of states: Power-up, Steady State, Flashing State, and Momentary State. The decimal point directly relates to the global SERVOSTAR SC enable.

Status Display					
SERVOSTAR STATE	CATEDISPLAY APPEARANCE				
Power-up	Momentarily lights all display segments (forming an 8), the decimal point and then "0" intermittently for several seconds before flashing "S".				
Steady State (No Faults)	Displays the operational mode (OPMODE). Displays "8" for digital position mode, "0" for digital velocity mode.				
Flashing State	Used to indicate an abnormal operating state: If a fault was detected, a flashing code will be displayed to identify the fault. Some codes consist of a sequence of two or more digits (see Troubleshooting section). In general, these faults will cause a latched disable (sometimes controllable through software switches). To clear fault, toggle SYS.MOTION or Remote motion input (except for OverCurrent). If the encoder initialization function (ENCSTART) is active, the OPMODE number will flash at a 3 Hz rate.				
Momentary Fault	<ul> <li>Displays a flashing character.</li> <li>C1 = Synchronization Error between Control and Positioner boards. May happen due to extremely high CPU load.</li> <li>C2 = Positioner fault (SYS.MOTION = 0). Indicates that SYS.MOTION is zero. Happens in the following situations: <ol> <li>Motion input is inactive (check state of SYS.DIN.1)</li> <li>Unhandled application error (check Sys.Error and ErrorHistory)</li> <li>Servo Error (check ServoEror)</li> </ol> </li> </ul>				
	When all the error situations (reasons) are cleared, set SYS.MOTION to "1" either by toggling Motion input or typing SYS.MOTION=1 in the terminal window.				

Status Display Decimal Point				
DECIMAL POINT STATE SERVOSTAR SC STATUS				
Steady OFF	No power to the motor			
Steady ON	SERVOSTAR SC enabled, power to the motor			
Flashing	SERVOSTAR SC enabled, power to the motor, but a motor safety			
feature has been disabled (for example, LIMDIS = 1).				

# **Understanding Conmodes**

The SERVOSTAR has only two Conmodes. Conmode one is where an "S" is displayed and compensates for a particular motor or changing a motor parameter. Conmode two is where an "8" or "0" is displayed and changes all other parameters, enabling the drive and performing motion.

A Conmode is changed in the **MOTIONLINK** main screen by the drop-down menu, "Conmode" or at the Terminal screen in either **MOTIONLINK** or BASIC Moves by typing either "sys.conmode = 1" or "sys.conmode = 2". If sys.conmode=0, you will encounter a C2 error.

# **Operational Modes**

The SERVOSTAR SC has the ability to assume different modes of operation. It is factory configured in OPMODE1 (Analog Velocity Controller) but may be reconfigured by the user. Not all commands and variables are active or meaningful in every OPMODE.

- OPMODE 0 **Digital Velocity Controller.** The SERVOSTAR SC is configured as a velocity-loop controller and is controlled by issuing a velocity command (JOG: jog command).
- OPMODE 1 Analog Velocity Controller. The SERVOSTAR SC is configured as a velocity-loop controller and is controlled through either a  $\pm$  10V analog input signal. The commanded velocity is proportional to the input voltage by the AnalogVelocityScale factor.
- OPMODE 8 **Position Controller Digital Position Mode**. The SERVOSTAR SC is configured as a digital positioning controller. This is the default mode, but can also be caused by issuing a Move command.

# System I/O

This section discusses the I/O features of the C3 connector (except for the Thermostat input on C2).

Analog Input (ANIN1, ANIN2) the position, velocity, or torque loop can receive its command from an analog voltage source and is selectable through the OPMODE variable. The analog input to the SERVOSTAR is differential (signals received at the two inputs are subtracted from each other to create a 'difference' used to command the rest of the system). This type of input has a high degree of noise immunity and, in many cases, allows for ground isolation between systems. This analog input also has a low pass filter (ANLPFHZ1, ANLPFHZ2) to prevent high frequency noise from entering the system.

The input voltage from the differential receiver is applied to a precise 14-bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) conversion system. The A/D conversion system is read by the microprocessor every 500 $\mu$ S for the position loop modes, every 250 $\mu$ S for the velocity loop mode, and every 62.5 $\mu$ S for the torque (current) loop mode of operation.

Encoder-based units come with the additional benefit of a Dual Gain (ANDG1, ANDG2) input. When enabled, the system uses two 14-bit A/D inputs to read the user-supplied analog signal. One input is a direct reading of the  $\pm$  10V signal; while the other incorporates a 2x gain term. When the input voltage is less than 4V, the 2x channel is used to determine the input voltage, extending the resolution to a 15-bit equivalent. Above 4V, the system uses the straight 14-bit conversion. Special software algorithms are used to minimize crossover distortion and add .25V of hysteresis.

Analog systems often require scaling and offset bias. The SERVOSTAR SC adds an analog offset (ANOFF1, ANOFF2) variable to this reading, performs an analog deadband (ANDB1, ANDB2) adjustment, and scales it through the position loop input scaling, velocity loop input scaling (VSCALE), or torque loop input scaling (ISCALE) before passing the data to the selected control loop. The analog input (ANIN) variable indicates the analog reading after the offset (ANOFF1, ANOFF2) and the deadband (ANDB) adjustments but before the loop scaling. The ANIN variable range is ± 22500 counts or mV.

The SERVOSTAR SC offers an automatic analog input zeroing function. Invoking either the ANZERO1 or ANZERO2 command while the SERVOSTAR SC is enabled or disabled samples motor velocity over a 32-mSec period and updates ANOFF accordingly to cancel out analog input offset. This command also incorporates an internal offset mechanism with finer resolution than ANOFF is capable of providing.

# Remote Enable Input (REMOTE)

The opto-isolated Remote Enable input (REMOTE) provides a hardware enable switch. This 12 to 24 VDC input disables or enables the power stage output to the motor. The signal must be customersupplied to get the SERVOSTAR to enable (in combination with other parameters) ACTIVE) and operate. Do not tap the signal off the logic supply (C5). The SERVOSTAR cannot be enabled just with Remote Enable, software enable (EN=1) is required. However, once SERVOSTAR is enabled user can disable or enable with Remote enable.

# Configurable Inputs (IN1, IN2, IN3)

These 12 to 24 VDC inputs are defined by the INxMODE variable (IN1MODE, IN2MODE, IN3MODE). Placing the appropriate value in INxMODE sets up the inputs to be used for such features as CC/CCW (clockwise/counter-clockwise) hardware position limits homing and more. When set for the CC/CCW hardware position limits, the inputs prevent any further motor travel in their respective direction but do not disable the SERVOSTAR or prevent motion in the opposite direction. These inputs are opto-isolated and considered "active enable" (current must flow through these signals to allow the system to operate). This provides a feature to reduce the possibility of personal injury. Energizing both the CW and CCW hardware position limits causes the SERVOSTAR to enter the HOLD mode.



The default settings of these inputs are for the hardware position limits. The Status Display flashes an 'L' upon power-up, indicating that a travel limit has been tripped. If these position limits are not in use, set LIMDIS=1.

# Configurable Analog Outputs (ANOUT1 & ANOUT2, 01)

The  $\pm 10V$ , 12-bit analog outputs (ANOUT1 and ANOUT2) are used only for monitoring. The setting of this variable allows you to meter various feedback quantities such as velocity, current, horse power, position feedback, following error, and more. This pin is referenced to DC Common (pin 4). The digital output (O1, O1MODE) is toggled in an On/Off state to indicate enable/disable and used for motor braking. All inductive loads require proper suppression.

# Configurable Digital I/O (C9, C10, C11, C12, C14)

The configurable digital I/O can be accessed from a task or command line with the commands, SYS.DIN or SYS.DOUT. Both inputs and outputs may be bit- or group-addressed. Users can also use digital inputs for asynchronous events.

# Fault Output Relay (RELAY, RELAYMODE)

The SERVOSTAR SC provides a drive ready or drive up output in the form of a relay (RELAY) output. The relay (RELAY) output is controlled by the SERVOSTAR SC's microprocessor. There is a software switch (RELAYMODE) that configures the relay (RELAY) output to act as a 'Drive Ready' or 'Drive Up' indicator:

RELAYMODE = 0	The relay is closed when the SERVOSTAR is error free and ready to run. This is a 'Drive Ready' configuration.
RELAYMODE = 1	The relay closes only when the SERVOSTAR is enabled. This is a 'Drive Up'
	configuration.
RELAYMODE = 2	The relay opens during a fault when the SERVOSTAR is disabled.



You can program this fault output to open on any system fault by triggering the Configurable Inputs (INxMODE, INx).

# Motor Thermostat Input (THERM, THERMODE)

The SERVOSTAR SC provides a motor thermostat input on the C2 connector that can be configured for different types of thermal protections (THERMTYPE) as well as manipulation of how the SERVOSTAR responds to a motor thermal condition (THERM, THERMODE, THERMTIME). Kollmorgen GOLDLINE motors and cables connect the thermostat through the feedback cable. The input to the SERVOSTAR SC should be electrically closed through the thermostat for proper operation. The SERVOSTAR normally flashes an 'H' in the Status Display when this input is electrically opened.



If a motor thermal device is not used, THERMODE is set to '3' to disable the feature and turn the 'H' status display indicator off.

# **Core Processors**

A 40 MHz embedded controller and a 40 MHz DSP controller are the heart of the SERVOSTAR SC. They use its internal operating system to monitor inputs, adjust outputs, communicate serially, maintain servo control, and monitor faults. The motion profile generation, programming and communication are handled by 100MHz x86 compatible embedded microprocessor, running real-time operating system. The flash memory firmware that controls the core processor and gives the SERVOSTAR SC its operating characteristics is saved in EEPROM. User programs are stored on Flash Disk (DiskOnChip). The version number of the firmware is read using the VER command. When calling for technical support, be sure to have the firmware version number readily available. The most recent version of firmware is available for purchase and is easily field-upgradeable through a PC.

# **Control Loops**

This section describes the servo control loops, their characteristics, and how to configure them.

## Servo Loop Description

The SERVOSTAR SC provides high performance motor control by controlling up to four distinct closed loop systems within the DSP:

- current
- commutation
- ♦ velocity
- position

The figure below depicts the control loops graphically.



### CURRENT LOOP

Since current and torque are proportional in a Permanent Magnet (PM) motor, the current loop is often referred to as the torque loop. The function of the current loop is to regulate motor current as directed by a current command signal. The current command signal from the microprocessor comes either from a direct user input (OPMODE 0) or from the output of the velocity loop. There are actually three current loops, one for each motor phase. Each current loop receives its own command input from the commutation loop.

The SERVOSTAR SC uses a fully digital, pole placement current loop with high bandwidth and a current loop sampling rate of 16 kHz ( $62.5 \mu$ S). All coefficients of the current loop are digitally calculated inside the SERVOSTAR for a given set of motor and SERVOSTAR characteristics. The current loop also includes adaptive gain terms to compensate for some non-linear effects.

The current loop incorporates electrical isolation for protection from the high-voltage BUS. These current loops also convert the output voltage to a Pulse Width Modulated (PWM) signal providing the highest efficiency possible. The PWM center frequency can be 8 or 16 kHz according to the SERVOSTAR size.

### **COMMUTATION LOOP**

This loop converts a single-phase current command signal into a three-phase, position-modulated sine wave input to the current loops. The SERVOSTAR SC has a patented sinusoidal waveform generator, which uses a technique called Torque Angle Advance to get top performance out of its motors. The waveform generator is part of the microprocessor and is updated at a 16 kHz rate. This provides hi-fidelity sinewave commutation at both low and high velocities. The sinewave output is aligned to the back EMF characteristics of the motor, making resolver (or encoder) alignment to the motor critical.

### VELOCITY LOOP

The purpose of the velocity loop is to regulate motor speed. Like the current and the commutation loops, the velocity loop is digital and uses the resolver or the encoder feedback signals to calculate actual motor velocity. The command for the velocity loop either come directly from user input (OPMODE 0 or 1) or the output of the position loop. The velocity loop is a digital sampling system operating at 4 kHz.

The difference between actual and desired velocity is filtered through a compensator algorithm and fed to the commutation loop. The SERVOSTAR SC offers four velocity compensators (methods of regulating velocity) and are selectable through the COMPMODE variable. The four are: Proportional-Integral (PI), Pseudo-Derivative-Feedback with Feed-Forward (PDFF), Standard Pole Placement, and Extended Standard Pole Placement.

### **POSITION LOOP**

The final control configuration is the position loop. The purpose of this loop is to maintain motor shaft position. Like the previous loops, the position loop is digital and uses resolver, encoder, and sine encoder feedback signals to determine actual motor position. The SERVOSTAR also accepts a position signal from an external feedback device (e.g., load encoder). It samples at a rate of 2 kHz and can be configured for three different modes of operation:

- Using a MOVE and HOME commands, the SERVOSTAR executes simple absolute, incremental (indexing), and homing motion profiles.
- Homing types (HOMETYPE) are available that home to a particular analog input level and position count, triggering either through the configurable inputs or the remote enable.

In this mode of operation, the SERVOSTAR also accepts an external load feedback signal through the C8 connector (DUALFB=1). This helps eliminate the positional inaccuracies (due to gear backlash and poor coupling) by positioning according to the load's position, not the motor shaft's position.

• The SERVOSTAR SC also operates in the position mode when the SERVOSTAR is in the hold position state.

# Torque Loop Operation

The SERVOSTAR SC has many internal variables used to examine and dictate system operation. Many of these variables and their locations in **MOTIONLINK** are presented graphically to enhance meanings and relationships.

### CURRENT SAMPLING

The current loop receives corrective feedback from the current sampling circuitry. The current sensors use closed-loop hall sampling techniques in all units.

The current sample is used by the current loops to regulate the current in each of the three motor phases. Two phases (A and C) of the current signal are sampled by the microprocessor at a 16 kHz rate. The momentary A phase current and C phase current can be monitored by examining the IA and IC variables, respectively. The microprocessor calculates the equivalent absolute current, which is monitored as I.

# Foldback

The SERVOSTAR SC offers two types of Foldback protection for both the motor and SERVOSTAR. The SERVOSTAR's microprocessor monitors the current feedback signal and develops an RMS value of this signal for the purpose of providing a value that represents the current in the motor. The system is similar to an "I-squared-T accumulator.

### DRIVE FOLDBACK

This Foldback algorithm monitors current feedback and, if the feedback exceeds the continuous current rating of the SERVOSTAR /motor combination (ICONT), decreases the system's current to the ICONT level. For example, under a step command input condition, the Foldback algorithm allows maximum peak current (IMAX) output from the SERVOSTAR for 2 seconds. After two seconds, the SERVOSTAR enters "Foldback mode" (FOLD =1) and begins an exponentially Foldback to the system's continuous current. It takes approximately six seconds for the exponential decay to drop from the system's peak current to its continuous level.



This Foldback feature is designed to protect the SERVOSTAR electronics, not the motor. The Configurable Output, O1, (pin 12) can be configured to indicate a SERVOSTAR Foldback condition.



For SERVOSTAR currents that exceed ICONT, but are below IMAX, the system period before Foldback occurs is extended beyond two seconds. Two seconds is the shortest time period that elapses before the SERVOSTAR enters Foldback and only occurs when maximum peak current (IMAX) is drawn.

### MOTOR FOLDBACK

This Foldback algorithm is designed to provide motor protection in cases where the SERVOSTAR's continuous current rating is above the motor's continuous rating. This combination is often desired in applications where maximum peak motor torques are required. However, the SERVOSTAR could source current on a continuous basis indefinitely to the motor and would force it beyond its thermal capability. Unlike the SERVOSTAR Foldback, you have complete configurability over this feature (MFOLD, MFOLDD, MFOLDDIS, MFOLDR, MFOLDT).

# TROUBLESHOOTING

# **Technical Information**

Technical papers and publications about the SERVOSTAR and its associated applications complete the information package necessary for the user to become well versed with the product. Kollmorgen's engineering and technical resource staff has prepared these notes. Also included are the *SERVOSTAR*® *SC Setup Guide, SERVOSTAR*® *SC Reference Manual* and *SERVOSTAR*® *SC User Manual*. The PSP CD-ROM contains the technical content in electronic .PDF format. You must have Adobe's Acrobat Reader (also available on the CD-ROM) installed on your computer to view and print these documents. The most recent versions of all the material contained in this PSP CD-ROM can be downloaded from Kollmorgen's website (www.motionvilliage.com).

# **Troubleshooting tools**

**MOTIONLINK** comes with a Status screen (click on "Status" button in the upper right-hand corner of Main screen- containing complete error history information. This information can also be accessed in the terminal window in **MOTIONLINK** by entering "?ErrorHistory"

# **MOTIONLINK Diagnostic Tools**

The Drive I/O screen (click on "Drive I/O" button on the side of the Main screen) in **MOTIONLINK** gives you the ability to check the status of the Drive I/O on Connector C3: You can also monitor a variety of variables from the Monitor screen (click "Monitor" button at the top of the Main screen) and compare up to three variables at one time. The Tune and Record screen allows you to evaluate the system's actual performance against a predefined command profile. Also from this screen, you can vary the performance by adjusting the gains until optimum following is achieved.

### **BASIC** Moves Development Studio Diagnostic Tools

In BASIC Moves Development Studio, there is a terminal window that allows you to query the drive direction for values and obtain information on errors. Common Troubleshooting commands are:

?ErrorHistory – List all errors ?ServoError –List active servo error ?Sys.conmode and ?OpMOde – List present operation mode ?TaskList – List status of task loaded in RAM ?EventList – List status of loaded Events

The Watch window allows you to display parameters realtime. This is an excellent tool to monitor key parameters, inputs and outputs throughout the operation of the program.

The Message Log displays program syntax errors and can be used to print information during program execution.

The Editor provides single-stepping, allowing you to execute single lines of the program.

The Task Manager Window (access from menu bar) shows the present status of each task, including the last executed line of the program (this number appears below the Source heading in the Task Manager Window).

# **Most Common Problems and Solutions**

The table below contains a list of the most commonly encountered problems and suggests corrective actions for each problem.

Problem	Corrective Action
Apply 24V and SC does not turn on	Make sure that you have 20 to 28 volts applied to either pin 5 or pin7 of connector C13 and that you have the 24V return on either pin 6 or pin8. The 24V power supply must be able to source 1.5 amps.
BASIC Moves gets hung up after "Select Device" screen. This is where SC shows up but after	Close BASIC Moves. Power down drive. Change SW 6 to 0. Restart BM. If problem goes away, there may be a bug in Config.prg or Autoexec.prg tasks.
(BM) hangs up	Error in Autoexec.prg. Check ?ERRORHISTORY in terminal for error description.
BASIC Moves or <b>MOTIONLINK</b> locks up during operation	Close BASIC Moves or <b>MOTIONLINK</b> and delete KMTCPIP from the Windows Task Manager (access by Ctrl/Alt/Del). Restart BASIC Moves or <b>MOTIONLINK</b> .
c1 Error	Internal System Error. To reset set sys.conmode = 1 then sys.conmode = 2.
c2 Error (Sys.motion flag turned	Check Motion HW Input (Sys.DIN.1) on connector C9.
off)	Check ?SERVOERROR in BASIC Moves terminal for error. Correct problem causing error.
	Check ?ERRORHISTORY in BASIC Moves terminal. Correct problem causing error.
	If running a program, verify the program did not change any properties designed to only be changed when drive is disabled. (Example: Sys.conmode).
	After correcting problem the motion flag can be reset by toggling motion input (sys.din.1) on connector C9 pin 2 or entering sys.motion = 1 from the BASIC Moves Terminal.
Cannot communication thru HMI port (connector C8)	

Problem	Corrective Action
Cannot communicate with Ethernet connection (connector C6)	Review detailed installation and operating instructions for 95/98/ and NT operating systems in Appendix B of this <i>Installation Manual</i> .
	Verify your computer's operating system and <u>version</u> <u>number</u> are supported (Example : Win 95 version 4.0 or later).
	If point-to-point connection, make sure you are using a "crossed" communication cable.
	Poll to see if used by another computer.
	If multiple SC users on a network, recommend keeping IP Pool on Network and all users use the same IP Pool.
	Verify LAN supports 10Mbits communication and not just 100Mbits.
	Make sure addresses in IP Pool have been created.
	Make sure addresses and subnet mask in IP pool and Host computer's IP work together. (If communicating via network review addresses with network administrator). Refer to Example of Choosing an IP Address in Appendix B for further details.
	To verify hardware connection. "ping" the SC's address through the Start menu (Start/Run then enter on the command line "Ping <i><drives address<="" i=""><i>&gt;</i>").</drives></i>

Problem	<b>Corrective Action</b>			
Cannot communicate with Serial connection (connector C7)	Review detailed installation and operating instructions for 95/98/ and NT operating systems in Appendix B of this <i>Installation Manual</i> . Verify your computer's operating system and <u>version number</u> are supported (Example: Win 95 version 4.0 or later).			
	Make sure you are using a crossed cable (containing only pins 2,3, and 5).			
	Check Serial Port Parameters.			
	38400 8 Data bits No parity 1 Stop bit Verify no flow control			
	Check SLIP connection is set up (Not PPP).			
	Check SLIP set-up parameters:			
	IP Address on computer set to 91.0.0.1 (SERVOSTAR SC's IP address is fixed at 91.0.0.2). Uncheck IP header compression. Uncheck "default gateway on remote network" if checked.			
	In NT, package size must be 1006.			
	Make sure you are connected to C7 and right serial port in the PC.			
Cannot Enable Drive	Verify 24 volts is applied to both Remote enable input on connector C3 and Motion Input (Sys.DIN.1) on connector C9.			
	Check for Fault indication on LED display.			
Cannot get to Sys.conmode =1 (0	Dip switch 1 and 6 not set to 1.			
or -1 remains on display)	Drive not configured for motor. Configure motor using <b>MOTIONLINK</b> .			
Cannot get to Sys.Conmode = 2 (S remains on display)	Check ?SERVOERROR from BASIC Moves terminal for bad Motor configuration.			
	Add statements to application program to set sys.conmode = 2. See Getting Started Program.			

Problem	<b>Corrective Action</b>		
Lose communication with Basic Move when task(s) are executing	Communication with the SC is priority level 2. Do not set any task priority levels to 1 or 2.		
	Task Priority level default is 16.		
One or more BASIC Moves functions stop working	If after cycling power, select Debug  Reset Communications from the menu bar. Close and restart BASIC Moves		
Operating problems	For standard operation, verify setting of DIP switches. SW 1 and 6 must be set to 1. All others to 0		
Problems after changing Autoexec.prg or Config.prg task	Set DIP switch 6 to 0. Reboot and delete task config.prg or autoexec.prg. Reboot again with DIP switch 6 set to 1		
Program stops running and Error box pops up in BASIC Moves	Open the Task Manager in BASIC Moves and review information shown: Task Status, Error and Source.		
	Review information in BASIC Moves Message Log.		
	Check <b>?SERVOERROR</b> in BASIC Moves terminal for error. Correct problem causing error.		
	Check <b>?ERRORHISTORY</b> in BASIC Moves terminal. Correct problem causing error.		
Very slow communications with BM when task(s) is executing	Multiple parameters in the BASIC Moves Watch Window can slow down communications		
Watchdog Error (3 horizontal lines on display) after operating for some time	Check Loading of Processor (during operation). From terminal type <b>?Sys.AverageLoad</b> and <b>?Sys.peakLoad</b> .		
Watchdog Error (3 horizontal lines on display) at Start up	Possible error in Config.prg or Autoexec.prg. To check, delete Config.prg and Autoexec.prg from SERVOSTAR SC File Manager. Set DIP switch 6 to 0. Reboot and delete task config.prg and/or autoexec.prg. Reboot drive again with DIP switch 6 set to 1.		
	Use Config.prg only to define user variables and allocate memory.		
	Delete Var_file.cfg from terminal. Contact factory for assistance.		

# **Error codes**

In most cases, the SERVOSTAR SC communicates error codes with a text message via the serial port to the host. Some error codes are also transmitted to the Status Display. The same message is saved in the EEPROM under an error history log (FLTHIST, ERR) so nothing is lost when power is removed. Not all errors reflect a message back to the host. In these cases, the no-message errors communicate only to the Status Display.

The response of the SERVOSTAR to an error depends on the error's severity. There are two levels of severity:

- 1. Warnings (simply called errors and not considered faults and do not disable operation)
- 2. Fatal errors (fatal faults that disable almost all SERVOSTAR functions, including communications).



The SERVOSTAR automatically disables at the occurrence of a fault. Executing a SERVOSTAR disable command (DIS or K) followed by the EN command or toggling the Remote Enable line (REMOTE) resets the fault latch and, if the fault condition is no longer present, re-enables the system.

### Fault Monitoring System

The SERVOSTAR's microprocessor is constantly monitoring the status of many different components. In general, the SERVOSTAR latches all fault conditions so you can readily determine the source of the problem. When a fault is detected, it is logged in the internal error log, indicated in the Status Display, enunciated over the serial port, and causes a SERVOSTAR disable. Many faults can be reset by toggling the hardware remote enable (REMOTE input).

The following provides a list of some of the more frequent faults the SERVOSTAR may detect in the unit hardware and operating system:

- **Bus OverVoltage:** an over-voltage condition shuts down the SERVOSTAR and displays a lower-case 'o' in the status display. This fault occurs normally during REGEN operation where the BUS is raised to higher values than that produced by the power supply.
- **Bus UnderVoltage:** an under-voltage condition shuts down the SERVOSTAR and displays a 'u' in the status display. This fault normally occurs when the incoming line voltage drops out or a fault occurs in the power supply.
- C2: A C2 error indicates either a positioner fault such as excessive following error or that there is an error in the running of the application program. To obtain additional information on the cause of this error, from the terminal window in either BASIC Moves Development Studio or MOTIONLINK type in:
  ?errorhistory

or

?servoerror

**Drive OverTemperature:** The internal heatsink temperature is monitored for an unsafe condition. This condition causes a 't' to be displayed and disables the SERVOSTAR. The SERVOSTAR eventually cools enough to allow reset.

- **Feedback Loss:** Hardware is used to detect a wire-break condition in encoder-based systems or the presence of the Sine and Cosine resolver feedback signals in resolver based systems. The lack or loss of either of these signals causes the SERVOSTAR to disable and display an 'r' in the status display.
- Hardware Position Limit Inputs: The IN1, IN2, IN3 Inputs are constantly monitored. If the variables INxMODE set these inputs for CW/CCW hardware position limits, they are monitored for an open-circuit condition. Although not necessarily an error condition, motor operation can be effected by these inputs. The SERVOSTAR SC ignores the hardware position limits if you sets LIMDIS = 1. The worst-case scenario is that further motion in the given direction is not allowed with an 'L' in the status display. If both CW and CCW position limit inputs have detected an open-circuit condition, the SERVOSTAR SC enters into Hold position state (HOLD = 1).
- **Low-voltage power supply faults:** Out of tolerance values on the  $\pm$  12 VDC analog supplies displays an 'A' and the disables the SERVOSTAR.
- Memory reliability: During the initialization process upon power up, the run time, variables memory (RAM Random Access Memory), and the program memory (EPROM Electrically Programmable Read Only Memory) are tested.

If a RAM fault is detected, an 'I' is displayed and the SERVOSTAR halts. If an EPROM fault is detected, a 'c' is displayed and the SERVOSTAR halts.

The user configuration non-volatile memory (EEPROM - Electrically Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory) is also checked for integrity upon power-up. Any discrepancy in this data is noted with an 'e' in the status display. After power-up is successfully completed, any subsequent fault in the operation of the EEPROM is noted with an 'E' in the status display.

- **Motor OverTemperature:** The Motor's External Thermostat input is monitored for an open circuit condition. You define (using THERMODE) what happens under this fault condition. The worst-case scenario is a power stage disable when an 'H' appears in the status display, and the fault relay contacts (RELAY) are open.
- **No compensator:** In case the SERVOSTAR cannot design a compensator, such as after a RSTVAR command, CLREEPROM, or any change in the motor or SERVOSTAR parameters, a flashing minus sign (-) is displayed and the SERVOSTAR is disabled. This display normally indicates that the SERVOSTAR does not have a compensation file loaded.
- **OverSpeed fault:** Software continuously monitors the actual feedback speed. If the motor speed exceeds the VOSPD limit, a 'J' is displayed and the SERVOSTAR is disabled. This normally occurs when there is an improperly tuned system and the load overshoots its commanded speed.
- **PowerStage Fault (OverCurrent):** Hardware circuitry monitors load short-circuit, transistor failure, and instantaneous OverCurrent. In general, a power stage fault cannot be reset by toggling the Remote Enable, only by power cycling. This condition is indicated by a flashing 'P' in the status display.
- **RMS OverCurrent (FoldBack):** the FoldBack detection system can 'clamp' the available output current. This is not a true fault condition, but may cause undesired performance as the command current is limited below what is required to achieve the desired performance. This condition is indicated with a flashing 'F' in the status display and is detected by monitoring the FOLD switch variable.

**WatchDogs:** In addition, the SERVOSTAR incorporates a watchdog system to maintain software operation integrity. Failure of the watchdog mechanism displays three bars on the status display and halts the SERVOSTAR. WatchDog faults can be caused by:

- 1. Syntax or programming error in the Config.prg or Autoexec.prg file.
- 2. Certain extreme CPU loading conditions.
- 3. More serious problem. Contact the factory for support

### Message Faults

Status Display	Fault Message	POSSIBLE CAUSE	Err #
Display	Faut Message		
t	Power stage OverTemp	overload, fan malfunction, power stage failure	1
0	OverVoltage	excessive decel rate*	2
Р	OverCurrent	power stage surge current*	3
r0	External feedback fault	Feedback signal through C8 not correctly detected	4.0
rl	Resolver line break	break in resolver feedback detected	4.1
r2	RDC error	fault in resolver-to-digital converted detected	4.2
r4	A/B line break	break in encoder A/B input lines detected	4.4
r5	Index line break	break in encoder index line	4.5
r6	Illegal halls	illegal hall combination detected	4.6
r7	C/D line break	break in sine encoder C/D line detected	4.7
r8	A/B out of range	sine encoder A/B level out of range	4.8
r9	Burst pulse overflow	sine encoder fault	4.9
u	Under voltage	bus voltage is too low	5
Н	Motor over temperature	motor overload caused overheating	6
A1	Positive analog supply fail	Failure in +12V supply	7.1
A2	Negative analog supply fail	Failure in -12V supply	7.2
J	OverSpeed	$velocity \ge VOSPD$	8
J1	OverSpeed	Velocity $\geq$ 1.8 x VLIM	8.1
Е	EEPROM failure	Faulty EEPROM	9
е	EEPROM checksum fail	EEPROM checksum invalid on power up*	10
F	Foldback	System in FoldBack mode	12
d5	Positive over travel fault	PFB exceeded PMAX with PLIM=1	14.1
d6	Negative over travel fault	PFB exceeded PMIN with PLIM=1	14.2
d1	Numeric position deviation	Internal fault	15.1
d2	Excessive position deviation	PE > PEMAX	15.2
С	Communication interface	A communications fault has occurred	16

\*These faults can only be cleared by cycling power

## No Message Faults

					Non-
Status Display	Flashing	Steady	Fault Description	Fatal	Fatal
=	~		Watchdog (DSP)	~	
≡		~	Watchdog (HPC)	~	
-1	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>		No Compensation	~	
-2	~		Invalid Velocity Control	~	
-3	~		Encoder not Initialized on attempt to enable	~	
-4	~		Encoder Initialization failure	~	
L 1	<b>v</b>		Hardware CW limit switch open		~
L 2	<b>v</b>		Hardware CCW limit switch open		~
L 3	~		Hardware CW and CCW limit switches open		~
L 4	~		Software CW limit switch is tripped (PCMD>PMAX & PLIM=2)		~
L 5	~		Software CCW limit switch is tripped (PCMD <pmin &="" plim="2)&lt;/td"><td></td><td>~</td></pmin>		~
A 3	~		Positive and negative analog supply fail		
Ι		~	RAM failure (during init)	~	
С		~	EPROM checksum (during init)	~	
E101	~		Altera load failure (during init)		
E102	<b>v</b>		Altera DPRAM failure (during init)		
E103	~		DSP load fail (during init)		
E104	~		DSP alive failure (during init)		
8	<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>		Test LED		
C1	<b>v</b>		Synchronization Error	~	
C2	~		Positioner fault (SYS.MOTION=0) SYS.MOTION must be 1.	~	

# Error Handler (1 through 999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
1	CPU Divide error	Generated by the CPU if the divisor of DIV instruction is zero or the quotient overflows the result register.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
2	CPU Debug	Generated by the CPU after each instruction if Trap Flag is set.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
3	CPU NMI	Generated by the CPU when the input to the NMI pin is asserted	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
4	CPU Breakpoint	Generated by one-byte breakpoint instruction.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
5	CPU Detected Overflow	The CPU will generate this error if Overflow Flag is set.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
6	CPU Bound range exceed	Generated by BOUND instruction when the value to be tested is less than the indicated lower bound or greater than the indicated upper bound.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
7	Invalid opcode	This error is generated when the CPU attempts to execute an invalid opcode.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
8	CPU extension not available	This error is generated if a coprocessor instruction is encountered and a coprocessor is not installed.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
9	CPU: double exception detected	This error is generated when multiple exceptions occur on one instruction of the CPU, or an exception occurs in an exception handler.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
10	CPU Coprocessor overrun	This error is generated if the coprocessor attempts to access memory outside a segment boundary.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
11	CPU Invalid Task State Segment	Automatically generated by CPU during task switch if the new TSS specified by the task gate is invalid.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
12	CPU segment not present	Generated when loading a segment register of the CPU if the segment descriptor indicates that the segment is not currently in memory.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
13	CPU Stack fault	Generated on a stack overflow or underflow or if an inter-level transition or task switch references a stack segment marked "not present".	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
14	CPU General protection fault	Generated when the CPU detects a protection violation which does not fit under another category having a separate interrupt. This error is generated on an 80486 protected- mode floating-point protection fault.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
15	CPU Page fault	This error is generated on attempting to access a 4K memory page whose page table entry has the "present" bit cleared.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
16	CPU Coprocessor fault	This error is generated if the coprocessor attempts to access memory outside a segment boundary; it may occur at any arbitrary time after the coprocessor instrunction was issued.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
17	CPU Alignment error	Automaticly generated by the CPU if misaligned memory access is made.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
18	Invalid FPU operation	Generally indicates a program error ( <i>eg</i> , an out-of-range argument to trigonometric functions, SQRT of negative operand, logarithm of zero or negative operand).	ASYNC	Error	Idle Task
19	FPU: Unnormalized operand	This error is generated when an instruction attempts to operate on an operand that has not been normalized. The result may have reduced significance due to lost low-order bits.	ASYNC	Error	Idle task
20	FPU divide by zero	This error is generated when an instruction attempts to divide an operand by zero.	ASYNC	Error	Idle Task
21	FPU overflow	This error occurs if the magnitude of the rounded true result will exceed the magnitude of the largest finite number in the destination format.	ASYNC	Error	Idle Task
22	FPU Underflow	Two related events can contribute to this error: 1) creation of a very small operand which can cause some other exception later, and 2) overflow upon division producing an inexact result.	ASYNC	Error	Idle Task

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
23	FPU Precision lost	It occurs when the result of an operation is not exactly representable in the destination format. For example, 1/3 cannot be precisely represented in binary form. This exception occurs frequently and indicates that some (generally acceptable) exception has been lost. Most applications mask this exception.	ASYNC	Error	Idle task
24	FPU Stack fault	Generated on the FPU due to stack overflow or underflow.	ASYNC	Error	Idle Task
25	Invalid FPU operation	Generally indicates a program error ( <i>eg</i> , out-of-range argument to trigonometric functions, SQRT of negative operand, logarithm of zero or negative operand). System Context	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
26	FPU: Unnormalized operand	When an instruction attempts to operate a non-normalized operand, the result may reduce significantly due to lost low- order bits. Most applications mask this exception. System Context	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
27	FPU Zero divide	This error is generated when an instruction attempts to divide a finite non-zero operand by zero. System Context.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
28	FPU Overflow	This error occurs if the magnitude of the rounded true result will exceed the magnitude of the largest finite number in the destination format.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
29	FPU Underflow	Two related events can contribute to this error: 1) creation of a very small operand which can cause some other exception later, and 2) overflow upon division producing an inexact result.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
30	FPU Precision lost	It occurs when the result of an operation is not exactly representable in the destination format. For example, 1/3 cannot be precisely represented in binary form. This exception occurs frequently and indicates that some (generally acceptable) exception has been lost. Most applications mask this exception.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
31	FPU Stack fault	Generated on the FPU due to stack overflow or underflow.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
---------	--	--	------------	-------------	------------------
32	Unknown module ID	Internal error. Unregistered code of the module encountered in the error code.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
33	Failed to create Logger MsgQ	Internal system resource cannot be allocated	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
34	Failed to create logger task	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
35	Failed to write into Error History file	An error occured while writing to the log file. This can happen if many errors are generated simultaneously.	ASYNC	Error	None
36	Invalid logger message queue ID	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
37	Failed to create logger mutex	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
38	Invalid logger mutex	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
39	Task does not exist	It's impossible to retrieve error information about non-existent task. Generated in response to ERROR or ERRORNUM task query when task does not exist.	SYNC	Note	None
40	Invalid message queue	Invalid message queue ID	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
41	Failed to create Error Handler task	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
42	Failed to create Error Handler MsgQ	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
43	Error message queue overflow	The error flow too intense. Some error messages may be lost.	ASYNC	Error	None
44	Logger message queue overflow	The error message flow is too numerous. Some error messages may be lost.	ASYNC	Error	None
46	Could not stop Interpreter	User process cannot be stopped by the Default system error handler.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
47	Cannot proceed user error handler	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
48	Error code with invalid severity	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
49	Error code with invalid context info	Internal error. Contact technical support. Invalid context value recognized by the Error Handler state machine.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
50	Cannot open Error History file	A file system error occured while opening Logger file.	ASYNC	Error	None
51	User error handler cannot be created.	An error occcured while spawning User error handler task. Add more memory.	SYNC	Error	None

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
52	User error handler MsgQ failed	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
53	User error handler stack allocation failed.	Could not create intenal data structure. Add memory or unload unnecessary tasks.	SYNC	Error	None
54	Reccuring attempt to define User System error handler	Only one instance of the User System error handler may exist.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
55	User error handler stuck	User error handler cannot run.	ASYNC	Error	Watchdog
56	Unknown error	The error code cannot be recognized by the Error Handler.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
1000	No Error	No Error	SYNC	Note	
1001	Error creating the BIT task	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
1002	Error creating the semaphore	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
1003	System memory exhausted: unload tasks or add memory	The BIT task verifies that at least 200kBytes of contiguous memory are not available. Unload unnecessary tasks or add memory.	ASYNC	Note	
1004	Out of memory: add more memory or unload unnecessary tasks.	Out of memory. BIT is not able to allocate needed amount of RAM for the new handle. This can occur in response to the WdInit() function. Add more memory or unload unnecessary tasks.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
1005	Invalid BIT handle	BIT task received an invalid handle (pointer). The handle is generated in response to the WdInit() function, and must be specified in the WdCycle() function	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
1006	Task stuck	One of the tasks that should report to BIT has not done so. A task tells BIT that it will report to init when it executes the WdInit() function. Thereafter, the task must execute WdCycle() periodically.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog

### Built In Test (1000 through 1999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
2001	Unknown error	Unrecognized error code	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
2002	Failed to create RTS MutEx	Failed to allocate data structure for MutEx semaphore.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
2003	RTS semaphore failed	Failed to allocate data structure for synchronization semaphore	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
2004	Overlap error	Not enough sytem resourses to run all the mandatory system task.	ASYNC	Error	
2005	Invalid RTS element ID	Cannot perform scheduling operation over unregistered RTS element.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
2006	Invalid mutex ID	Semaphore cannot be taken.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
2007	Unknown internal code	The task received invalid request for operation.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
2008	Not enough memory	Not enough memory to allocate internal data.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
2009	Failed to create RTS task	Failure while spawning the Real- Time Scheduler task	ROOT	Fatal Fault	

#### Run Time Sheduler (2000 through 2999)

### Motion (3000 through 3999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3001	Internal error	Contact technical support	SYNC	Error	
3002	Nonexistent axis	Internal error. An unknown axis	SYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
		number was given. This error can			
		be caused only through an invalid			
		input from the interpreter.			
3003	Nonexistent axis	Internal error.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
3004	Internal error.	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
3005	Nonexistent axis	Internal error. Invalid axis handle was entered.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdig
3006	Element is already	The element that is to be attached	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
	attached to a task	is already attached to a task. The			
		error can occur in the Attach			
		command or in any command that			
		needs the attachment permission.			
3007	Invalid mode	Internal Error. Invalid mode	SYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
		given. In many commands a			
		mode variable is given. The mode			
		can have only certain values			
		depending on the command that			
		is issued (MOT_MODAL,			
		MOT_NODAL,			
		MOT_IMMEDIATE).			
3008	Velocity out of range	The value of the velocity is not in	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
		the allowed range for this system			
		variable (max. velocity, cruise			
		velocity, final velocity,). For			
		example, VMAX=-1			
3009	Time value out of range	Invalid time duration value given.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
		The time value (usually a time			
		interval) is not in the allowed			
2010	<b>XX</b> 7	range.	SVDIC.	<b>F</b>	
3010	wrong parameter value.	Invalid command value supplied.	SYNC	Error	
		In all motion commands the			
		appropriate value of the			
		(StopTupe, PreseedTupe)			
2011	Not available nodel	Internal Error. The variable is	SVNC	Fotol Foult	Watahdag
5011	not available libual	surrently not available. Nodal	SINC	ratal rault	watchuog
	package.	variables can be queried also			
		although this feature is not			
		supported by the user command			
		set The nodal package is not			
		always available			
3012	Acceleration out of	The value of the acceleration is	SYNC	Error	
5012	range	not in the range of allowed	5110	21101	
	8-	acceleration values. For example,			
		ACC=-1			
3013	Deceleration out of	The value of the deceleration is	SYNC	Error	
	range	not in the range of allowed		-	
	0	deceleration values. For example,			
		DEC=-1			
3014	Jerk out of range	The value of the jerk is not in the	SYNC	Error	
		range of allowed jerk values. For			
		example JERK=-1			

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3015	Velocity override out of range	The value of the velocity override is out of the range of allowed values. For example, VELOCITYOVERRIDE = -1	SYNC	Error	
3017	Axis following error: verify PEMax	The position error of the axis is greater than the allowed error, as specified by PEMAX.	ASYNC	Error	Motion is stopped
3018	Wrong position value.	Invalid position value given. The given position is out of the defined position range for that axis.	SYNC	Error	
3019	Internal error	Internal error. Cannot delete an axis.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	Watch dog
3020	The element is moving	This error is returned when attempting to enter three Move commands from the terminal. Only two move commands are buffered from the terminal. The error is also returned when attempting to enable gearing/camming when the axis is already in motion.	SYNC	Error	
3022	Absolute homing maximum distance exceeded. The home procedure will be stopped.	There is a maximum homing distance defined for a safety measure in cases when homing fails.	SYNC	Error	
3025	Axis active	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
3026	Motion inhibited: Set Motion flag to ON	Motion on the specified element is inhibited by the MOTION property.	SYNC	Error	
3027	Internal error	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
3029	Internal error	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
3033	SYNC flag not set: set StartType to SYNC	The SyncStart command was issued upon an element for which the StartType is not defined as SYNC.	SYNC	Error	
3035	Synchronized movement is pending: clear sync using SyncClear command	There exists a pending synchronized movement for the motion element. The motion element cannot be moved until the SyncStart command has been issued, or the synchronization has been cleared with the SyncClear command.	SYNC	Error	
3036	Automatic braking	The element is being automatically stopped. This can occur when the final velocity is nonzero and there are no pending motion commands.	ASYNC	Error	
3037	Not stopped.	The proceed command given to a element that was not stopped.	SYNC	Error	
3038	The element is stopped from another task	Cannot define gearing/camming when the element is stopped by another task. The STOP command also inhibits motion in this case.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3039	Only the task can Proceed	The element has been stopped by a task. The Proceed command must come from a task, and not from the terminal.	SYNC	Error	
3040	Only the terminal can Proceed	A motion element that has been stopped by a STOP command from the terminal can be Proceeded only by a proceed command from the terminal, and not from another task.	SYNC	Error	
3041	Nothing to proceed	The Proceed command has been issued on an element that has not been stopped.	SYNC	Note	
3042	Proceed in progress.	There are certain restrictions for the proceed/stop commands. See the sdd document.	SYNC	Error	
3043	Cannot execute move. Element is stopped by another task.	When an element has been stopped with the STOP command, it is not possible to Move it until the same task that executed the Stop command issues the Proceed command.	SYNC	Error	
3044	Jog is not allowed:	Jog can be done on single axis	SYNC	Error	
3045	Wrong speed override value.	The percentage that is given to the velocityoverride function is limited. Refer to the Reference Manual for the allowed range.	SYNC	Error	
3046	Smooth factor out of range	Smoothing value given is not in range. Refer to the Reference Manual for the allowed range.	SYNC	Error	
3047	Excessive Jerk/Acceleration ratio: decrease jerk or increase accel and decel	The Jerk/Acceleration ratio defines the time needed to achieve maximum acceleration. If this time is shorter then 5 motion samples the new Jerk/Acceleration is not accepted. The ratio is limited by 0.9*PI/(5T), where T is the cycle time in milli seconds. Thus, the limit is 282.74 when the cycle time is 2 msec, and 141.37 when the cycle time is 4 msec. Use a SmoothFactor from 0 through 100 to get around the Jerk limitations.	SYNC	Error	
3048	Proceed command may be entered from terminal	If the task that stopped the motion was killed, or terminated without giving the Proceed command, the Proceed command is allowed from the Terminal.	SYNC	Note	
3049	Axis is disabled.	The axis has been disabled.	SYNC	Note	
3050	The movement has been recalculated	There has been a change in the status of the motion, between the time movement calculation started, but before that movement could be executed.	SYNC	Note	
3052	Internal error	Contact technical support	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3053	Wrong master declaration.	Wrong definition of master. The user will not see this error, since the command is filtered before it gets to the Motion.	SYNC	Error	
3054	Invalid slave specification	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
3055	The element is already a slave	Cannot declare a master or a slave (gear or cam) when the axis is already a slave.	SYNC	Error	
3056	Axis is a slave: absolute motion not allowed	An absolute position motion is not allowed if the axis is set up as a slave.	SYNC	Error	
3057	Absolute move not allowed on slave axis	This error occurs when attempting to execute an absolute move command on a slave axis. Only incremental moves are allowed on the slave axis.	SYNC	Error	
3058	The drive is disabled or in the following mode; no motion allowed	Movement cannot be commanded if the drive is disabled or the axis is in a following mode.	SYNC	Error	
3059	Master axis unknown: specify master source	This error is generated when a master declaration is missing. Existence of a master is checked when an axis is declared as a slave.	SYNC	Error	
3060	Invalid cam index	Internal error. This error appears when there is a cam query and the cam is not recognized.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3061	Can't declare more cam tables.	Cam table cannot be defined. The number of cam tables that can be defined is limited to 256.	SYNC	Error	
3062	Wrong cam table size	Cam table size must be modulo 16. This error is returned when loading a cam file using the LoadCamData command.	SYNC	Error	
3063	Problem reading cam data file: verify file size and existence.	There was a problem while reading data from the file. The number of data items that were read from the file does not match the file size, or the file doesn't exist.	SYNC	Error	
3064	No NEXT cam table: camming terminated and slave axis stopped	The end of the cam table has been reached and there is no next cam table. The axis will stop and is taken out of slave mode.	ASYNC	Note	
3065	No PREVIOUS cam table: camming terminated and slave axis stopped	The beginning of the cam table has been reached and there is no previous cam table. The axis will stop and is taken out of slave mode.	ASYNC	Note	
3066	Two identical master values inside cam table: change cam table	Two identical master values were found inside the cam table when monotonicity was checked.	SYNC	Error	
3067	The cam table is not monotonic	Cam table must be monotonic (up or down). Monotonicity is checked when an axis is declared as a slave or when a file is loaded into a cam table.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3068	Cam offset not found in the cam table	The specified CamOffset is not found in the cam table. The value of the CamOfsfet must be given as one of the Master position values in the cam table.	SYNC	Error	
3069	The cam table is already linked: unlink table before changing it	File cannot be loaded into the cam table if it is chained. The cam table cannot be deleted if it is chained.	SYNC	Error	
3072	Enabled.		SYNC	Error	
3073	Time cannot be negative.	Specification for Time must be positive.	SYNC	Error	
3074	Cam table is empty.	The cam table is been checked when loading a file or when an axis is declared as a slave (camming mode)	SYNC	Error	
3075	Gear ratio out of range	The gear ratio is out of range. Refer to the GearRatio axis property in the Reference Manual.	SYNC	Error	
3076	Desynchronization between tasks while gearing		SYNC	Error	
3077	The Cam data array is in use	When the Cam data array is in use, operations on it are limited: 1) loading a file into the data array, 2) storing the array, 3) re- create the data array, 4) writing slave or master values into the array. A cam data array is in use when that array is the active cam of the axis.	SYNC	Error	
3078	Cam cycles out of range	The specified number of cam cycles is out of range. Refer to the CYCLE cam property description in the Reference Manual.	SYNC	Error	
3079	No active cam.	No cam is defined for the axis. This error is returned when the following axis property queries are issued: ActiveCam, CamCycle, CamIndex.	SYNC	Error	
3080	Wrong file extension: must be .cam	The cam file extension must be CAM	SYNC	Error	
3081	Cam chain is not connected correctly.	When the axis is moving to the next/previous table the connection between the tables is checked. If the connection is not correct the axis will stop and is taken out of slave mode.	ASYNC	Error	
3082	Feedback velocity is out of limit	The actual velocity is limited by the VelocityOverspeed property. When the actual velocity exceeds the VelocityOverspeed, the motion is stopped.	ASYNC	Error	Motion is stopped

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3083	Feedback velocity is out of limit when motion is stopped: drive disabled	The actual velocity is limited by the VelocityOverspeed property. When the actual velocity exceeds the VelocityOverspeed, the motion is stopped. If this happens when motion is already stopped, then the drive is disabled. This may indicate a drive tuning problem or a noise problem.	ASYNC	Error	Drive is disabled
3084	Wrong velocity over speed value		SYNC	Error	
3085	Incorrect parameter value		SYNC	Error	
3086	Incorrect number of point coordinates given to this movement		SYNC	Error	
3087	Target position will exceed the limit		SYNC	Error	
3088	Wrong factor value : specify a positive value		SYNC	Error	
3089	Property value cannot be changed while drive is enabled	Some properties, such as conversion factors, cannot be changed while the drive is enabled. Refer to the Reference Manual for limitations on instruction execution.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
3094	Hard limit switch detected	Hard limit switch detected	ASYNC/SYNC	Error	Motion is stopped
3096	Minimum position limit must be less than the maximum limit		SYNC	Error	
3098	Time value inaccuracy: value is rounded up to nearest integer multiple of 1 ms.	The settling time (TSettle or TSettleMax) must be an integer multiple of 1 ms. If it is not, the time specified is accepted, but the actual settling time is rounded up to the nearest integer multiple of 1 ms	SYNC	Note	
3099	Cannot execute InPosition	The INPOSITION value of the StartType has no meaning when the previous movement is with nonzero final velocity.	SYNC	Note	
3101	Time jog is meaningless		SYNC	Note	
3102	The index is out of the table range.	The index is out of the cam table range. This error is returned when attempting to access a value in the cam table, where the index is greater than the number of points in the table.	SYNC	Error	
3103	Given value will cause cam table to be non- monotonic: value not accepted.	The cam table is chained, but the data are not in use. The given value for the master would cause the table to be non-monotonic, and so the value is not accepted.	SYNC	Note	
3104	The movement is calculated until the position limit		SYNC	Note	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3107	Initialized the velocity to its maximum		ASYNC	Note	
3112	Initialized the acceleration to its maximum		ASYNC	Note	
3113	Initialized the deceleration to its maximum		ASYNC	Note	
3114	Initialized the jerk to its maximum		ASYNC	Note	
3115	System entered into following mode, all motions aborted		SYNC	Note	
3129	Task start failure.	Internal Error. Cannot start the task. The error is returned from the VxWorks function.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3130	Task end failure.	Internal Error. Cannot end the task. The error is returned from the VxWorks function.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3131	Invalid semaphore ID or time-out elapsed.	Internal Error. Invalid semaphore ID. The error is returned from the VxWorks function.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3132	Invalid message.	Internal Error. Invalid message received by the Motion Manager. The Motion Manager is a message driven task. Receiving an invalid message is a fatal system fault.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3133	Invalid element handle.	Internal Error. Invalid element handle encountered during the real time execution. The error is identical to the MOT_ERR_IELEMENT but this time the source is internal (not the interpreter)	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
3134	No memory.	Internal Error. No more free memory in the system. The memory of the system is exhausted. The memory for the motion should be always available.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3135	Invalid pointer.	Internal Error. Invalid pointer encountered during the real time execution. A zero pointer was found in the RTK or MM task.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3136	Corrupted task data.	Internal Error. Invalid task data. Each attached task is represented by a block of data; if these data are corrupted a fatal system error occurs.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3137	Task mismatch.	Internal Error.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3138	Bad dimension.	Internal Error. The element dimension is invalid.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3139	Corrupted data	Internal Error. During the	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
		element deletion procedure,			
		corrupted data were encountered.			
		When the element data are			
		deallocated, a number of checks			
		are conducted. Among the checks			
		is verification that all allocated			
		motion packages are deleted; if			
		not the error is set.			
3140	RTS blocked.	Internal Error. The RTS didn't	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
		release the semaphore. The RTS			
		releases this semaphore			
		periodically, but if the semaphore			
		is not released after two time			
		periods, this error is set. It is an			
		indication that the RTS is not			
		functioning properly or that the			
		interrupt handler stopped.	~~~~		
3141	Bad profile data.	Internal Error. Profiler error.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
		Invalid data for the profile			
21.42	DTC 1 11	calculation given.	and	<b>D</b> (1 <b>D</b> 1)	
3142	RTS element add	Internal Error. The RTS failed to	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
	failed.	add an element. The RTS refused			
0144	DTG 1	to add new element in its table.	AGUDIC	<b>D</b> (1 <b>D</b> 1)	
3144	R IS clear motion	Internal Error. The RTS failed to	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
	Talled.	clear the motion enable flag. The			
		initialization or during the			
		suspend resume transitions			
31/15	RTS set motion failed	Internal Error The RTS failed to	ASVNC	Fatal Fault	
5145	KTS Set motion failed.	set the motion enable flag The	ASTINC	l'atal l'auti	
		error can occur during the RTK			
		initialization or during the			
		suspend-resume transitions			
3146	RTS overrun clear	Internal Error The RTS failed to	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
5110	failed	clear the overrun flag Occures in	51110	i utur i uurt	
		the run time only.			
3147	RTS delete failed.	Internal Error. The RTS failed to	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
		delete an element. At the end of	~		
		the deletion task, the system			
		failed to delete the RTS entry.			
		Recovery action is not needed			
		because the task is already dead.			
3148	Computing too late	The precomputation is late. For	ASYNC	Error	
		immediate motion changes such			
		as immediate move or speed			
		override, a precomputation time			
		delay is assumed. Normally this			
		delay should be sufficient to			
		complete computation. This error			
		generally indicates that the			
		system is too heavily loaded.			
3149	Unable to create system	Internal Error. The VxWorks is	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
	resource.	unable to crate the resource			
		(Queue, Semaphore,) Possible			
		cause: No more memory,			
1		VxWorks down.			1

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3150	Invalid profiler parameters.	Internal Error. Invalid profiler parameters.	Sync	Fatal Fault	
3151	Profiler in motion.	Internal Error. Certain profiler settings can be done only when the acceleration is zero.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3152	Invalid profiler status.	Internal Error. The profiler is state driven. If an invalid status is encountered this error occurs.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3153	RTK continuously interrupting.	Internal Error. The RTK is in a continuously repeating stop state.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
3154	Maximum Position reached.	Maximum axis limit reached. Usually by a JOG command.	SYNC	Error	
3155	Minimum position reached	Axis minimum limit reached. Usually by a JOG command.	SYNC	Error	
3156	No previous package.	Internal Error. In the precalculation process a pointer of the previous package in the m.p. ring is needed.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3158	Property value cannot be changed while drive is disabled		SYNC	Error	
3159	No memory for axis definition	No more free memory in the system. The memory of the system is exhausted.	SYNC	Error	
3160	Wrong PLS index.	Wrong PLS index.	SYNC	Error	
3161	Can't declare more PLS's	A maximum of 65536 PLS can be declared.	SYNC	Error	
3162	PLS property cannot be set while PLS is enabled	Certain PLS properties cannot be set while the PLS is enabled. First, disable the PLS, then change the property value.	SYNC	Error	
3163	PLS value cannot be accessed before the PLS data are created	In order to operate on a PLS, the PLS must be defined (using Common Shared As PLS), and the PLS data must be created (using CreatePlsData).	SYNC	Error	
3164	PLS position index out of range	This error is returned when attempting to access a non- existent PLS position. The number of PLS positions is set when creating the PLS data structure (using CreatePlsData).	SYNC	Error	
3165	PLS position data must be monotonic	The data in the PLS data structure must be arranged in ascending order. The order is verified when attempting to enable the PLS.	SYNC	Error	
3166	PLS output polarity must be binary (0 or 1)	The PLS output polarity must be binary (0 or 1).	SYNC	Error	
3167	Wrong value for the repetition interval.	Wrong value for the repetition interval.	SYNC	Error	
3168	PLS Enable must be binary (0 or 1)	The PLS Enable must be binary ( 0 or 1 )	SYNC	Error	
3169	Fatal Fault, the error number is not defined by the programmer	Internal error	SYNC	Fatal Fault	Watch dog
3170	PLS Hysteresis must be positive	The value specified for the PLS Hysteresis must be positive.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3171	PLS cannot be deleted	PLS cannot be deleted while it is	SYNC	Error	
	while it is enabled	enabled. First disable the PLS			
		using the PlsEnable property.			
3172	Wrong output index.	Wrong output index.	SYNC	Error	
3173	Cannot attach element.	The STOP command is used both	SYNC	Error	
	Element is stopped by	to stop motion and to inhibit			
	another task: issue	further motion. If the Stop			
	PROCEED command	command has been issued from			
		the terminal or a task, then the			
		motion element cannot be			
		attached by another task until the			
		Proceed command has been			
2174	Comment and a state of the	Issued.	SVNC	Eman	
31/4	Current property cannot	defined as a Master avia connet	SINC	Error	
	ovis	be abanged. First disable the			
	anis	Master/Slave by setting the Slave			
		property of the slave axis to OFF			
3177	Cannot execute the	Contact technical support	SYNC	Frror	
5177	MOVE command	contact technical support.	51110	LIIOI	
3178	Cannot execute the stop	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
	command				
3179	Cannot MOVE	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
	IMMED. Proceed				
	motion				
3182	Disable time out	Disable timeout of the drives	SYNC	Error	
	expired: 1 ms phase	expired			
	reduced to 0				
3183	Settling time expired	Timeout for acheiving position	SYNC	Error	
2104		expired	and		
3184	Maximum trial time to	Maximum trial time to settle is	SYNC	Error	
	settle is less than	less than settling time			
2100	Settling time		CVALC.	<b>F</b>	
3186	Motion Buffer Full	I here are already 2 motions	SYNC	Error	
2102	Element is not attached	Trying to move an element that is	SVNC	Error	
5192	Element is not attached	not attached	SINC	EII0I	
3196	Wrong factor value:	Wrong factor value: specify a non	SVNC	Error	
5170	specify a non zero	zero value	SINC	LIIOI	
	value				
3240	Property valid for axis	Some motion element properties	SYNC	Error	
	only	are valid for an axis only.		-	
3241	Delay cannot be used	The DELAY command is subject	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
	with the StartType set	to the StartType of the motion		-	
	to Immediate.	element being delayed. However,			
		using StartType Immediate with			
		the DELAY command is not			
		allowed. Change the StartType			
		before executing the DELAY			
		command.			
3247	System Motion	The Default System Error	SYNC	Error	
	property can be set only	Handler sets the System Motion			
	from the terminal	that low. Once this happens,			
		though, the Motion property can			
		System Motion=ON common dia			
		issued form the terminal			
	1		1	1	1

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
3248	Wrong motion type	Internal Error. Invalid command given. In all motion commands the appropriate value of the command parameters is checked ( MOT_LINEAR, MOT_CIRCULAR, MOT_JOG)	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
3249	System automatic braking	The velocity is not zero, therefore the element is stopped by the system. This can occur, for example, when a slave axis has passed its position limits. The asis is then stopped by the system.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
3250	Invalid Motion Type	Motion types are LINEAR or ROTARY.	SYNC	Error	
3251	RTS set motion failed in initialisation.	Internal error. The RTS failed to set the motion enable flag. The error can occur during the RTK initialization or during the suspend-resume transitions.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
3252	RTS clear motion failed in initialisation.	Internal error. The RTS failed to clear the motion enable flag. The error can occur during the RTK initialization or during the suspend-resume transitions.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
3253	Following error when motion is stopped: drive disabled. Check value of PEMAX.	There is no motion commanded, but still there is a position error. The maximum position error (PEMax) may be set too low, or the axis may be moved by external force, or the drive may not be tuned properly.	ASYNC	Error	Drive is disabled
3254	Envelope error when motion is stopped: drives disabled. Check value of PEMAX	There is no motion commanded, but still there is an envelope error. The maximum position error (PEMax) may be set too low, or the axis may be moved by external force, or the drive may not be tuned properly.	ASYNC	Error	Drive is disabled.
3255	Fatal error	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
4000	No Error	No Error	SYNC	Note	
4000			SYNC		
4001	Error opening file for Retrieve	Error opening file for Retrieve	SYNC	Error	
4002	Error opening the file for Send	Error opening the file for Send	SYNC	Error	
4003	Creating message pipe for upload	Internal Error.	SYNC	Error	
4004	Creating message pipe for download.	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
4005	Removing message pipe for upload	Internal error.	ASYNC	Error	
4006	Removing message pipe for download	Internal error.	ASYNC	Error	
4007	Upload task exists	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
4008	Download task exists	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
4009	Creating upload task	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
4010	Creating download task	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
4011	Cannot create RAM drive device	Internal error.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
4012	Bad initialization option	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
4013	No memory for RAM drive volume	There is not enough memory to create the RAM disk. Possible solution: add more memory or delete unneeded files	SYNC	Error	
4014	Time-out during file transfer	Host has interrupted file transfer operation.	ASYNC	Note	
4015	No disk space	File operation could not be accomplished due to the lack of disk space.	SYNC	Error	
4016	File not found	Cannot locate the file	SYNC	Error	
4017	Error opening file	Error opening file	SYNC	Error	
4018	Error closing file	Error closing file	SYNC	Error	
4019	Disk full	There is no free disk space on the file device.	SYNC	Error	
4020	Invalid device name	Invalid device name specified for the file operation.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
4021	File cannot be deleted	There is no permission to delete the file.	SYNC	Error	
4024	Reading directory	An error occured while executing DIR command	SYNC	Error	
4025	Cannot create directory - it already exists or access is forbidden.	Cannot create directory because it already exists or access is forbidden.	SYNC	Error	
4026	Closing directory	An error occurred during execution of the DIR command	SYNC	Error	
4027	No memory for file data structure	Cannot allocate internal data structure. Add more memory or unload tasks that are not needed.	SYNC	Error	

### File System (4000 through 4999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
4028	Error writing into file	Error writing into a file	SYNC	Error	
4029	Error reading from file	Error reading from a file	SYNC	Error	
4030	Bad access to the file	Invalid pointer to the file handle	SYNC	Error	
4031	File extension is not recognized	Only specific file extensions are recognized. These are PRG for programs, REC for record files, CAM for cam files.	SYNC	Error	
4032	Cannot access this type of file	Access to this type of file is not permitted by the system.	SYNC	Error	
4033	File does not exist	This message is given when trying to operate on (Retrieve, Delete, Load) a file that does not exist on the flash disk.	SYNC	Error	
4034	Root directory is full	The number of files in the the root directory has reached the maximum number of files allowed.	SYNC	Error	
4035	Invalid semaphore ID	Invalid semaphore ID. The semaphore guards linked list of the files.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
4037	Password invalid	Invalid password entered	SYNC	Error	
4038	Password protected	The file cannot be Deleted or Retrieved because it is protected by a password. Use the ProgramPassword command to remove the preotection.	SYNC	Error	
4039	Error setting the password	Cannot write into the system password's log.	SYNC	Error	
4040	File in use: access denied	A file with same name already has been opened. If it was open for reading you cannot open it for writing.	SYNC	Error	
4041	No available file descriptors	No file descriptors available at the current directory.	SYNC	Error	
4042	Illegal name	The file name is illegal from the File system's point of view.	SYNC	Error	
4050	Volume not available	Volume not available	SYNC	Error	
4051	Internal file system error	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
4052	Opening directory	An error occured while accessing a directory	SYNC	Error	
4053	Unknown error	An unknown error code was generated while the File System was in operation.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	

# Entry Station (5000 through 5999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
5000	No Error	No Error	SYNC	Note	
5001	Failed to open device driver.	Internal error. Contact technical support	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5002	Failed to create ouput pipe: add more memory.	Faled to create pipe. Add more memory.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5003	Failed to open output pipe.	Internal error. Contact technical support	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5004	Failed to create input task: add more memory.	Not enough memory to create task. Add more memory	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5005	Failed to create output task: add more memory.	Not enough memory to create task. Add more memory	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5006	Failed to create semaphore: add more memory.	Faled to create sync semaphore: add more memory.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5007	Failed to install driver.	Internal error. Contact technical support	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5008	Failed to add device to IOsys.	Internal error. Contact technical support	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5009	Serial communication error; Bad BCC: try again	Failed to match Block control character in message	ASYNC	Error	
5010	Serial communication error; Bad protocol data: try again	Faled to detect new line in message	ASYNC	Error	
5011	Serial communication error; Bad protocol data format: try again	Faled to format output message	ASYNC	Error	
5012	Failed to write translator input.	Memory exhausted on RAM drive. Add memory or delete REC files.	Terminal	Error	
5013	Failed to read translator input.	Internal error. Contact technical support	Terminal	Error	
5014	Failed to write translator output	Internal error. Contact technical support	Terminal	Error	
5015	Failed to create semaphore: add more memory	Failed to create mutex for active context. Add more memory.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5016	Failed to run loader.	Internal error. Contact technical support	Terminal	Error	
5017	Failed to run Interpreter.	Internal error. Contact technical support	Terminal	Error	
5018	Failed to run Backend.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	Terminal	Error	
5019	Failed to run Translator.	Internal error. Contact technical support	Terminal	Error	
5020	Failed to create internal file: add more memory.	Failed to create back-end output file. Add more memory.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5021	Failed to create memory device	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
5022	Virtual input index out of range	Virtual input is out of range. Refer to Sys.Vin in Reference Manual.	SYNC/ASYNC	Error	Idle Task
5023	Virtual output index out of range	Virtual output is out of range. Refer to Sys.Vout in Reference Manual.	SYNC/ASYNC	Error	Idle Task
5024	Internal error	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
5025	Fast data array index out of range.	Index specified for fast data must be within the range. Refer to fast data properties in Reference Manual	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
5026	Incorrect fast data check sum.	Fast data are not initialized. The host must write valid data before the SC reads it.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
5027	Invalid Fast Data semaphore id.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5030	Unknown error	Internal error. Contact technical support	Terminal	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
5036	Error code is invalid	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog

# Loader (6000 through 6999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
6000	No Error	No Error	SYNC	Note	
6001	Task already exists,	When loading a user task or defining a new event, a process with the same name may already exist. Source : Load, OnEvent	SYNC	Error	
6002	Failed to open program file	Failed to open a program file for reading because it: 1) does not exist, 2) there are too many open files, or 3) there is not enogh memory. If this occurs on power up, verify that the CONFIG.PRG file exists with valid data.	SYNC	Error	
6003	Bad element index,	Bad task index passed as a parameter. Indicates that system data are not reliable anymore. Data problem Source : Task priority updated, event prolog.epilog	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
6004	Array overflow	Too many events/tasks defined (task load, event create) Source : Load, OnEvent	SYNC	Error	
6005	Failed to open translator map file,	Failed to create MAP file. Source: Loader	SYNC	Error	
6006	Cannot open translator error file,	Failed to create translator error file in root	SYNC	Error	
6007	Task must be killed first	Cannot unload a task if it is not in either the Killed state or the Ready state.	SYNC	Error	
6008	Task does not exist	When unloading the user task or event: the process with the name specified may not exist. Source: Unload, EventDelete, Task priority get.	SYNC	Error	
6009	Failed to run interpreter,	Failed to call interpreter function or spawn interpreter task. Resource problem Source : configuration (root),Load,OnEvent	SYNC/ROOT	Error	
6010	Event task already exists	Event task with given name already exists.	SYNC	Error	
6011	Failed to create data segment,	Cannot allocate data segment when Loading the task. Resource problem Source : Load	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
6012	Failed to create code segment,	Cannot allocate code segment when loading the task. Resource problem	SYNC	Error	
6013	Invalid semaphore ID,	Source : Load Failed to take ITCB mutex. Bad	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
		Source : any ITCB routine which tries to update ITCB data (Load,Unload, Priority etc, OnEvent etc.)			
6014	Failed to create data stack,	Cannot create interpreter data stack when Load or OnEvent is attempted Resource problem Source : Load, OnEvent	SYNC	Error	
6015	Failed to create function stack,	Cannot create interpreter Func stack when Load or OnEvent. Resource problem Source : Load, OnEvent	SYNC	Error	
6016	Failed to create command line code segment,	Cannot create command line code segment	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
6017	Failed allocate memory for event node,	Cannot allocate memory for event node. Resource problem Source : Load, prolog, epilog	SYNC	Error	
6018	Specified priority does not exist.	Lookup in event list by priority or by event itcb idx failed. The problem may lie with data reliability because some procedures look for elements in the event list. If the element is not in the list, the task is aborted Source : event list management, priority modify Comment : cannot happen during normal runtime	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
6019	Invalid event node,	Invalid event ID. NULL reference to current/previous active events. Resource problem Source : event management, priority modify	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
6020	Invalid parent task node,	Invalid parent task ID. Requested ITCB idx is not the same as in the event list. Data integrity violated. Source: Load, Unload Comment : cannot hapen during normal runtime	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
6021	Invalid interpreter pointer,	NULL pointer to internal interpreter registers encountered. Source : event management Comment: cannot happen during normal runtime. If the error occurs, then this task cannot be handled: NULL pointer to interpreter but ITCB index still exists.	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
6022	Invalid operation code	Invalid operation code for loader handler	SYNC	Error	
6023	Invalid event list mutex,	Cannot take event list mutex, for it is invalid). Bad pointer	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
		Source : event management (prolog, epilog), Load, Unload, OnEvent			
6024	Failed to delete OnError handler	Cannot delete OnError handler (message queue, interpreter)	SYNC	Error	
(0.0.5	L 110 F	Source : OnError	ACIDIC		
6025	Invalid OnError message queue	ID. Bad pointer.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
		Source : sending error message to OnError task			
6026	Illegal task priority	Illegal priority 0 (which is reserved for OnError) specified	SYNC	Error	
		Source : load, OnEvent, priority modify			
6027	Invalid parent task semapore	Happens when an attempt to take parent task sync semaphore fails.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
		Source : Loader, OnEvent, OnError			
6028	Invalid translator mutex	Happens when an attempt to take translator mutex fails.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
		Source : Loader, OnEvent, OnError			
6029	Zero file size detected.	Cannot load an empty file.	SYNC	Error	
6030	Failed to create user task error handler	Cannot create default task error handler (task spawn, message queue)	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
		Source : Load			
6031	Command given in invalid context.	Command given in invalid context.	SYNC	Note	
6032	Invalid priority range.	Invalid priority specified.	SYNC	Note	
6033	Failed to create translator mutex	Occurs at start up when creating translator mutex fails. Source : Loader, OnEvent, OnError	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
6034	Failed to open translator output file,	Failed to create permanent translator output file	ROOT	Error	
6035	Failed to open backend output file,	Failed to create permanent backend output	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
6036	Cannot open translator string file,	Failed to create translator string file in root	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
		Source : Root			

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
6037	Failed to create mutex,	Failed to create loader mutex in ITCB initialization	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
6038	Failed to create sync semaphore	Root : there is one common sync semaphore for creating tasks and events	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
6039	Failed to retrieve system settings	Failed to retrieve system settings	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
6040	Failed to create command line files.	Failed to create temporal command line files (ITCB init) Source : Root	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
6043	Cannot delete task STDIN	Failed to delete the input message queue for a task.	SYNC	Error	
6045	No permission: stop the task(s) first	Reset ALL is not allowed if any task is running.	SYNC	Error	
6046	File cannot be loaded	This error occurs when trying to load config.prg, system, or other reserved file.	SYNC	Error	
6047	Invalid Translator mutex	Invalid mutex, Internal error due to memory corruption or limited memory.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
6048	Invalid operation code	Invalid operation code.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
6050	Unknown error	Unknown error	SYNC	Fatal Fault	

### Translator (7000 through 7999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
7000	No Translation Errors	No Translation Errors	SYNC	Error	
7001	Error writing to internal translator output file	Error writing to ouput file of translator. The translator uses a temporary file on the RAM disk. Add more memory or delete unneeded REC files. This error aborts the translation process	SYNC	Fault	
7002	Error writing to internal translator temporary file	Error writing to the temporary file of the translator. The translator uses a temporary file on the RAM disk. Add more memory or delete unneeded REC files. This error aborts the translation process.	SYNC	Fault	
7003	Error writing to translator error file	Error writing to the error file of the translator. The translator error file is stored on the RAM disk. Add more memory or delete unneeded REC files. This error aborts the translation process.	SYNC	Fault	
7004	Error writing to translator MAP file	Error writing to the map file of the translator. This error aborts the translation process.	SYNC	Fault	
7005	Errors found during translation	Errors were found during translation. This general message is returned after a LOAD command if translation errors were found in the task. The error severity is FATAL FAULT if a translation error is found in the CONFIG PRG file.	SYNC	Error	
7006	Variable could not be added to internal symbol table	Internal error. Add more memory. This error will abort the translation process.	SYNC	Fault	
7007	Variable already declared	A variable can be declared only once.	Translation	Note	
7008	Subroutine already exists	The subroutine has already been defined	Translation	Error	
7009	Translator temp file could not be opened	Internal error. The temporary file of the translator could not be opened.	SYNC	Fault	
7010	Value out of range	Value out of range	SYNC	Error	
7011	Subroutine could not be added to symbol table	The symbol table is an internal data structure. If information cannot be written to it, then probably there is not enough memory. Add more memory.	SYNC	Fault	
7012	Call could not be added to symbol table	The symbol table is an internal data structure. If information cannot be written to it, then probably there is not enough memory. Add more memory.	SYNC	Fault	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
7013	Undefined motion element in command	The motion element (axis) you are trying to use is undefined	Translation	Error	
7014	Axis cannot be added to symbol table	The symbol table is an internal data structure. If information cannot be written to it, then probably there is not enough memory. Add more memory.	SYNC	Fault	
7015	Axis is already defined	The axis being declared already exists. Use a different name for the axis.	Translation	Note	
7016	Internal error.	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
7017	Unload all tasks first	Unload tasks in memory.	Terminal	Error	
7018	Internal translation error	Internal error	SYNC	Error	
7019	Variable does not exist	The variable you're trying to use doesn't exist. Make sure it has been declared.	Translation	Error	
7020	No default motion element: use the WITH instruction	You are trying to use a command without explicitly defining a motion element, and a default motion element has not been defined by the WITH instruction.	Translation	Error	
7021	Property valid for Axis only	Axis property only.	Translation	Error	
7022	Could not change axis name	Internal error. Contact technical support.	Translation	Error	
7023	Axis could not be created	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fault	
7024	Axis not created	Axis not created.	ROOT	Error	
7025	Too many values into vector	Too many values into vector	SYNC	Error	
7026	Too many variable names: simplify the expression	The maximum number of variables allowed in an expression is 32	Translation	Error	
7027	Instruction given in invalid context	The command you are trying to use cannot be used in this context. Check the allowed Scope of the instruction in the Reference Manual.	Translation	Error	
7028	PROGRAM must be on the first line	The PROGRAM keyword must be on the first line	SYNC	Error	
7029	Program symbol table not created	Internal error. An internal data structure could not be created. Add more memory or delete unneeded files.	SYNC	Fault	
7030	Call symbol table not created	Internal error. An internal data structure could not be created. Add more memory or delete unneeded files.	SYNC	Fault	
7031	SUB symbol table not created	Internal error. An internal data structure could not be created. Add memory or delete unneeded files.	SYNC	Fault	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
7032	CALL references non-	You are trying to call a	Translation	Error	
	existent SUB	subroutine that does not exist.			
7033	SUB is never called	The subroutine is never called in	SYNC	Note	
1035		the program	STITE	11010	
7034	Translator Initialization	Internal error. The Translator	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
	failure	could not be initialized. Contact			
7035	Translator syntax error	The syntax of the expression is	Translation	Error	
		wrong. Check correct syntax in Reference manual.			
7036	Program structure error	The program must adhere to a well-defined structure. Refer to the section on Tasks in the User's	Translation	Error	
		Manual.			
7037	Not enough space for parser stacks	Not enough space for parser stacks	SYNC	Error	
7038	Parser stack overflow	Parser stack overflow	SYNC	Error	
7039	Syntax Error	Syntax Error	SYNC	Error	
7040	Translator out of memory	Translator out of memory	SYNC	Error	
7041	Invalid numbers of drives	Invalid numbers of drives	SYNC	Error	
7042	Event definition not allowed in event action	Event definition is not allowed in event action	SYNC	Error	
7043	Event already defined in this program	Event already defined in this program	SYNC	Error	
7044	Could not create new event symbol.	Could not create new event symbol.	SYNC	Error	
		Internal error			
7045	Unmatched ned of event definition block	Unmatched ned of event definition block	SYNC	Error	
7046	Parameter repitition not allowed	Parameter repetition not allowed	SYNC	Error	
7047	Undefined event	Undefined event	SYNC	Error	
7048	Label repeated in the same block	Label repeated in the same block	SYNC	Error	
7049	GOTO references non- exisiting label	GOTO references non-exisiting label	SYNC	Error	
7050	String too long ( limit = 80 char )	String too long ( 80 characters )	SYNC	Error	
7051	Too many dimension in declaration	Too many dimension in a declaration ( maximum number of dimensions is 10 )	SYNC	Error	
7052	Number of dimension does not match delcaration	Number of dimension does not match delcaration	SYNC	Error	
7053	Label repeated in the same block	Label repeated in the same block	SYNC	Error	
7054	If block mismatch	If block mismatch	SYNC	error	
7055	While block mismatch	While block mismatch	SYNC	error	
7056	For block mismatch	For block mismatch	SYNC	error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
7057	Invalid array index	Invalid array index	SYNC	error	
7058	Name already declared as variable or axis	Name already declared as variable or axis	SYNC	error	
7059	Invalid number of coordinates	Contact technical support.	SYNC	error	
7060	Name of axis is invalid	Name of axis is invalid	SYNC	error	
7061	Variable cannot be deleted from the symbol table	Variable cannot be deleted from the symbol table	SYNC	error	
7062	Variable not declared : Not enough reserved memory space	There is not enough memory space to declare the variable	SYNC	Note	
7063	Error definition allowed only once in program	Error definition allowed only once in program	SYNC	error	
7064	Unmatched end of error definition block	Unmatched end of error definition block	SYNC	error	
7065	Command not allowed into OnError block	Command not allowed into OnError block	SYNC	error	
7066	Wrong index type of array. Index must be long	The type of the index of the array must be long	SYNC	error	
7067	Wrong input type. Input must be long Data Type	Wrong input type. Input must be long (This can occur when we are trying to querried 1.3 AND 1.4)	SYNC	error	
7068	Index of array must be a constant value	The number of elements in an array must be declared with a constant value.	SYNC	error	
7069	Reserved command name	Variables cannot be declared with the same name as a reserved command name.	SYNC	error	
7070	Too many nesting blocks	Too many nesting blocks	SYNC	error	
7071	With block mismatch	A With block definition must end with the End With statement	SYNC	error	
7072	Case Select block mismatch	Case Select block mismatch	SYNC	error	
7073	Invalid name of motion element	Invalid name of motion element	SYNC	error	
7074	Invalid property	Invalid property.	SYNC	error	
7075	Too many spaces	Too many consecutive spaces in a command	SYNC	error	
7076	Motion element must be an axis	Motion element must be an axis	SYNC	error	
7077	Invalid motion element	Invalid motion element.	SYNC	error	
7078	This property isn't a system property	This property isn't a system property	SYNC	error	
7079	Wrong given master type	Wrong given master typee (3 master types currently defined)	SYNC	error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
7087	Dimension mismatch	Dimension mismatch for location. Example : $A = B$ and dimension $A \diamond$ dimension B		error	
7090	System camming element does not exist	System camming element does not exist		error	
7091	Camming element can only be a system element	Camming element can only be a system element ( not a program variable )		error	
7092	Wrong input type for the select statement.	N/A		error	
7093	This expression cannot contain this unit	This expression cannot contain this unit. Example : ? i1 + i2 MMPS		error	
7094	Cannot execute the Drive command for axis	Cannot execute the Drive command for axis.		error	
7095	The HEX-keyword can only be used in a query command	The HEX-keyword can only be used in a query command	SYNC	Note	
7096	OnError can be defined only once in a program	OnError can be defined only once in a program	SYNC	Error	
7097	Incorrect print format	This error occurs if the print format for a print using statement is incorrect.	SYNC	Error	
7100	This property is a nodal only property	This property is a nodal only property	SYNC	Error	
7102	Try block mismatch	Try block mismatch	SYNC	Error	
7103	Cannot write a catch- case after the finally- case	A user cannot write another catch statement after the finally statement.	SYNC	Error	
7104	This property is a read- only property	Cannot assign a property to read only.	SYNC	Error	
7105	Undefined pls in command	Undefined pls in command	SYNC	Error	
7106	Pls could not be added to symbol table	A Pls could not be added to the symbol table. This is due to a memory fault.	SYNC	Error	
7107	Pls is already defined	Pls is already defined when the user wants to declare it.	SYNC	Error	
7108	Name of pls is invalid	Name of pls is invalid.	SYNC	Error	
7109	The with block must be closed before entering this block	The with block must be closed before entering a try block.	SYNC	Error	
7110	Cannot use locals in event block	Must use a global variable in the event conditions	SYNC	Error	
7111	The maximum length of the expression must be less than 128	The maximum length of the expression must be less than 128 characters.	SYNC	Error	
7112	Cannot move without target point	The target point is missing from the move command.	SYNC	Error	
7113	Expression can only contain strings	Expression can only contain strings	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
7114	This function cannot be used as a condition	This function cannot be used as a condition.	SYNC	Error	
7115	The pls cannot be declared within a program	The pls cannot be declared within a program	SYNC	Error	
7116	Nesting of try statement is not allowed	Nesting of try statement is not allowed	SYNC	Error	
7117	Missing end onevent statement	Missing end onevent statement	SYNC	Error	
7118	Then statement missing	A then statement is missing in the if statement	SYNC	Error	

Interpreter	(8000	through	<i>8999)</i>
-------------	-------	---------	--------------

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
8000	No Error	No Error	SYNC	Error	
8001	Division by zero	Division by zero.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
8002	Stack underflow.	Interpreter stack underflow. The possible cause is memory corruption or Translator generated invalid code.	SYNC	Fault	Interpreter is prevented from execution.
8003	Stack overflow.	Memory exhausted.	SYNC	Fault	Interpreter is prevented from execution.
8004	Functions stack underflow.	Interpreter stack underflow. The possible cause is memory corruption or Translator generated invalid code.	SYNC	Fault	Interpreter is prevented from execution.
8005	Functions stack overflow.	Memory exhausted.	SYNC	Fault	Interpreter is prevented from execution.
8006	Array index underflow.	Invalid array index value.	SYNC	Fault	
8007	Array index overflow.	Invalid array index value.	SYNC	Fault	
8008	Task not found.	Task operation failed. Reason: requested task does not exist.	SYNC	Error	
8009	Invalid breakpoint location.	Attempt to set breakpoint to invalid location. Example: on comment line or on existing breakpoint.	SYNC	Error	
8010	Out of memory.	Memory exhausted. Add more memory or unload unnecessary tasks.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
8011	End function error	Run time error in the external to interpreter function.	SYNC	Error	
8012	The task is still not terminated.	The task execution has not been terminated. This may occur if task is locked within some end- function, such as Move or Stop	SYNC	Error	
8013	The task is not stopped.	The task is not stopped (idled).	SYNC	Error	
8014	The task is terminated.	Task is terminated (killed).	SYNC	Error	
8015	Argument for EXP is out of range	The range of values for the EXP argument is +/- 7.09782712893383e+02. Values less than the lower limit can be used, but will return 0.	SYNC	Error	
8016	llegal mathematical function call	Invalid argument for mathematical function.	SYNC	Error	
8017	Argument for LOG is out of range	The argument to the LOG function must be greater than zero.	SYNC	Error	
8018	Negative parameter in SQRT operator	The argument to the SQRT function must be greater than or equal to zero.	SYNC	Error	
8019	Intepreter got invalid context definition.	Loader passes invalid context definition.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
8020	Varible does not exist.	Variable for watch does not exist.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
8021	Wrong number of dimensions.	Wrong number of dimentions for watch.	SYNC	Fault	
8022	Task is not running.	Task is stopped (idled).	SYNC	Error	
8023	Element could not be deleted from symbol table.	Element could not be deleted from symbol table.	SYNC	Fault	
8024	Task must be killed first.	Task is still running. It may be locked in some end-function such as "Move".	SYNC	Error	
8025	Invalid task state for the `StartTask` command. Kill task first.	Task is not terminated (killed), it may be locked in some end- function such as "Move".	SYNC	Error	
8026	Bad memory address.	Attempted access to an invalid memory address. The error may be due to either a mistake in the application or to memory corruption.	SYNC	Error	
8027	Bad I/O address.	Attempted access to an invalid I/O address. The error may be due to either a mistake in the application or to memory corruption.	SYNC	Error	
8028	Overflow	Overflow in calculations.	SYNC	Error	
8029	Underflow	Underflow in calculations.	SYNC	Error	
8030	Invalid mutex ID	Invalid mutex ID. The error may be due to memory corruption.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
8031	Invalid semaphore ID	Invalid mutex ID. The error may be due to memory corruption.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
8032	Error creating the semaphore	Error while creating the semaphore. The error occurs when memory is exhausted.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
8033	Invalid program checksum	Code segment has invalid check sum. The reason is memory corruption.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
8034	Invalid operation code	Invalid token COP usually due to memory corruption.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
8035	Task is interrupted by OnEvent or OnError	A task debugging command such as Step or StepOver, etc. is disabled due to an interrupted state of a task. The task switches to this state if it is interrupted by OnError or OnEvent.	SYNC	Error	
8036	Entry Station output buffer overflow	Entry Station output buffer overflow. Error probably is caused by an inoperable host, or user task sends too many messages.	SYNC	Note	
8038	The value passed to the function is out of range	The value passed to the function is out of range	SYNC	Error	
8039	Nesting of TRY-block is not allowed.	Nesting of TRY-block is not allowed.	SYNC	Fault	
8040	Invalid time or date	Invalid time or date entered.	SYNC	Error	
8041	Nothing to retry.	Retry command is applicable anly after a run-time error.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
8042	Task is busy.	Task is busy; debugging is not allowed. This happens when task is inside the end function.	SYNC	Error	
8043	Element could not be deleted while programs are in memory.	Element could not be deleted while programs are in memory.	SYNC	Fault	
8045	Cannot stop unbreakable task.	Cannot stop or debug unbreakable task	SYNC	Error	
8046	Invalid Serial Number format	Invalid Serial Number format	SYNC	Error	
8047	Invalid Authorization code	Invalid Authorization code	SYNC	Error	
8049	Wrong type of variable	Wrong type of variable	SYNC	Error	
8050	Argument for trigonometric function is out of range	The maximum value of the argument to a sin(x) or cos(x) is 9.223372036854699e+18	SYNC	Error	
8051	The result of mathematical function overflows	The magnitude of the result is greater than the maximum value	SYNC	Error	
8052	Element could not be added to symbol table. Internal Error	Element could not be added to symbol table. Internal Error	SYNC	Fault	
8053	No permission: stop the motion first	Motion should be stopped before Reset.	SYNC	Fault	
8054	Serial number has invalid format.	Serial number has invalid format.	SYNC	Error	

### Recorder (9000 through 9999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
9001	Recorder task cannot be created: add memory	The recorder task cannot be created. This may occur if there is not enough memory. Add memory or unload tasks that are not necessary.	SYNC	Error	
9002	Cannot create recorder mutex	Internal error.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
9003	Recorder task already exists	Only one instance of the Recorder is allowed	SYNC	Error	
9004	Invalid record gap value: must be a positive value	The record gap must be a positive value.	SYNC	Error	
9005	Too many record variables	Up to 6 variables may be specified for recording	SYNC	Error	
9006	Invalid number of record points: must be a positive value	Number of points must be a positive value	SYNC	Error	
9007	Not enough memory	Not enough memory for record operation. Add memory, or unload tasks that are not necessary. This can happen if the RECORD command specifies more data than can be stored in the available free memory.	SYNC	Error	
9008	Insufficient disk space to store recorded data	Record data are stored on the RAM disk. There is not enough free space on the disk to store the recorded data. Delete files fom the RAM disk and then try executing the RECORD command or the RECORDCLOSE command again	SYNC	Error	
9009	Disk I/O operation fault	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
9010	Failed to store recorded data	Failed to store recorded data on RAM disk.	SYNC	Error	
9011	Synchronization error. Recorder did not manage to run within a single cycle.	This error will occur if you attempt to record data that cannot be available immediately to the recorder, and that therefore result in the recorder operation not completing before the end of the cycle. This can happen, for example, if you try to record drive data that need to be accessed from the service channel.	ASYNC	Error	
9012	Creation of Data segment failed	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
9013	Creation of System segment failed	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
9014	Failed to run Interpreter's agent	Internal error.	ASYNC	Error	
9015	Invalid MutEx ID	Internal error.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
9016	Invalid record file extension: must be REC	Invalid file extension specified for recorder file. Only the REC extension is allowed.	SYNC	Error	
9017	Recorder hasn't been initialized	The RECORD command has to be successfully executed before the RECORDON, RECORDOFF or RECORDCLOSE commands can be executed.	SYNC	Error	
9018	Wrong index of recording variable	Internal error. Recording variable index is out of range.	ASYNC	Error	
9019	Recording already has been completed	The RECORDON and RECORDOFF commands cannot be executed if the Recording process has already been completed. Execute the RECORDCLOSE command in order to save the recorded data.	ASYNC	Note	
9020	Unknown Recorder state	Internal error	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
9021	Unknown error	Invalid error code recognized by the Recorder task.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	

### Event Handler (10000 through 10999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
10000	No Error	No Error	SYNC	Note	
10001	Event does not exist	Event does not exist	SYNC	Error	
10002	Too many events defined	To many events defined	SYNC	Error	
10003	Invalid event task id.	Failed to create an event handling task. This may occur during start up.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
10004	Invalid mutex id	Invalid mutex id	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
10005	Invalid semaphore id	Invalid semaphore id	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
10006	Invalid event message queue id	Invalid message queue id	SYNC/ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
10007	Memory allocation fail	Memory allocation failed	SYNC	Error	
10008	Invalid operation code	Invalid operation code for operation with internal linked list	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	
10009	Invalid RTS element	Invalid RTS element otained. It could happen at start up.	ROOT	Error	
10010	Event condition not specified	Event condition not specified. Condition pointer is NULL	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
10011	Error checking event condition.	Event condition function call failed	ASYNC	Error	
10012	Event invalid handle	Event invalid handle	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
10013	Interpreter invalid handle	Invalid pointer to Intepreter internal registers is used.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
10014	Failed to delete event entry	Failed to delete event entry	SYNC	Error	
10015	Task does not exist	Invalid event task name specified	SYNC	Note	
10016	Event action task is active	Event task is active (running at the moment of event deletion)	SYNC	Error	
10017	Event action is not specified	Pointer to action code is NULL	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
10018	Failed to create event mutex id	Error creating mutual exclusion semaphore for event handler	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
10019	Failed to create semaphore id	Error creating synchronization semaphore for event handler	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
10020	Failed to create event message queue id	Error creating message queue for event handler	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
10021	Invalid scanrate specified	Bad value of scan rate	SYNC	Error	
10022	Unknown Error	Unknown Error	SYNC	Fatal Fault	

### Backend Processor (11000 through 11999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
11000	No Error	No Error	SYNC	Note	
11001	%d:COP does not match its number.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	Translation	Error	None
11002	Error at line %d of the table of mnemonics. Token name already exists.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
11003	Symbol table of token mnemonics is full.	The symbol table allocated for token mnemonics is full. There is not enough memory available to create an internal data structure. Add more memory.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
11004	Unable to create symbol table for mnemonics.	There is not enough memory available to create an internal data structure. Add more memory.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
11005	%d:Unable to create symbol table for user names(labels).	There is not enough memory available to create an internal data structure. Add more memory.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
11006	Unable to delete symbol table for mnemonics.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
11007	Unable to delete symbol table for user names(labels).	Internal error. Contact technical support.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
11008	%d:Name `%s` already defined.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
11009	%d:Symbol table of user names(labels) is full.	Not enough memory for translation. Add memory, or unload tasks that are not necessary.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
11010	%d:Token mnemonic `%s` is invalid (unknown).	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
11011	%d:Number of parameters at line does not match the token `%s`	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
11012	%d:This token type is not supported yet.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
11013	%d:Symbol or label `%s` has not been defined.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
11014	%d:Calculated length of the token `%s` does not match its predefined value.	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
11016	%d:Out of disk space.	Out of disk space while attempting to write temporary file to RAM drive. Add more memory or delete REC files.	SYNC	Error	Idle Task
11019	Invalid Error code	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
### Internal Communication (12000 through 12999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
12001	Service Channel not open	Drive has indicated that it cannot open the service channel. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
12002	MDT telegram processing overrun	Overlap between reference generation and transmission. Try using a higher baud rate, longer cycle time, and reducing the amount of cyclic data.	ASYNC	Error	
12003	Interrupt Service Routine Overlap: use longer cycle time.	ISR's duration is too long (more than one communication cycle).	SYNC	Error	
12004	Service channel timeout waiting for drive	Internal error. Timeout during service channel transmission. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
12005	Service channel timeout while drive is busy	Timeout while the Service channel is busy.	SYNC	Error	
12006	Undefined error number	Internal error. Undefined error code	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12007	Axis cannot be enabled: check C1 and Remote Enable	This error occurs if the SERVO <b>STAR</b> SC times out while trying to enable the drive. A drive cannot be enabled if the drive is reporting a C1 error, or if the drive's hardware enable signal is Off.	SYNC	Error	Set CONMODE=2 and toggle SYS.MOTION.
12008	Axis cannot be disabled	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
12009	Invalid access to closing the Service Channel	Drive has indicated that it cannot close the service channel. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
12010	Axis cannot be enabled: check C1 and Remote Enable	A drive cannot be enabled if the drive is reporting a C1 error, or if the drive's hardware enable signal is Off.	SYNC	Error	Set CONMODE=2 and toggle SYS.MOTION.
12011	Axis cannot be disabled	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
12012	Drive not ready for power up	A drive cannot be enabled if the drive is reporting a C1 error, or if the drive's hardware enable signal is Off.	SYNC	Error	Set CONMODE=2 and toggle SYS.MOTION.
12013	Drive reports fault in C1.	When a drive fault occurs, the drive decelerates to a stop and releases torque.	ASYNC	Error	Set CONMODE=2 and toggle SYS.MOTION.
12014	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12015	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12016	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12017	No access is defined in the drive	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
12018	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12019	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12020	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12021	Invalid access to the element 1	Element 1 is read-only.	SYNC	Error	
12022	Bad handle-function index	Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
12023	Service channel data not initialized	Internal data structures had not been allocated yet. Internal error. Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
12024	Wrong communication phase: refer to Reference Manual	The command cannot be executed in the current communication phase. Refer to the Limitations of the instruction in the Reference Manual.	SYNC	Error	
12025	Invalid drive address: check if axis is Simulated	There may be a conflict between the axis DriveAddress and Simulated properties. If an axis is simulated, the drive address must be set to 0. If the axis is real, the Simulated property must be set to 0 (Off).	SYNC	Error	
12026	Internal error.	Internal error.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12027	Internal error.	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
12028	Wrong AT number.	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
12029	Not enough memory.	Not enough memory to allocate internal data structures. Add memory or unload unnecessary tasks.	SYNC	Error	
12030	Internal error.	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
12031	No memory to maintain Service container	There is no memory within DPRAM to maintain Service container data structure.	SYNC	Error	
12032	Service transfer not ready	Internal error. Previous service transfer not ready	SYNC	Error	
12033	No name	Element 2 has not been assigned a name	SYNC	Error	
12034	Name transmission too short	Drive expects more information.	SYNC	Error	
12035	Name transmission too long.	Drive expects less information .	SYNC	Error	
12036	Name cannot be changed	The name of IDN may not be changed (in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12037	Name is write-protected at this time	The name cannot be changed in the current communication phase.	SYNC	Error	
12038	Service transfer data unavailable	Internal error. No data available for the service transfer.	SYNC	Error	
12039	Initialization error	An error occured during initialization.	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
12040	Service channel handshake time-out.	Service channel handshake time- out. Drive does not acknowledge service transmission.	SYNC	Error	
12041	Missing telegram(s): communication interrupted	Controller didn't receive telegram from the drive(s) in communications phase 2. This error is generated when a drive stops functioning.	SYNC	Error	
12042	DPRAM overflow.	Not enough DPRAM space to allocate data structures. Try using less data in the cyclic data.			
12043	Data element too long	Cannot transmit very long data through the Service channel.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
12044	Error calculating T2: increase cycle time or baud rate	Error calculating MDT starting time. There is an expected time overlap between the AT's and the MDT. Either increase the cycle time, increase baud rate, or simplify the telegrams.	SYNC	Error	
12045	Error calculating T3	Error calculating command value valid time. The time calculated for T3 exceeds 1 ms.	SYNC	Error	
12046	Error calculating T4	Error calculating feedback acquisiton capture point. The time calculated for T4 exceeds 1 ms.	SYNC	Error	
12047	Error calculating TEND	Error calculating end of transmittion time.	SYNC	Error	
12048	No service data	Information field is probably empty - Internal Error.	SYNC	Error	
12049	Service channel hand- shake time-out	Service channel handshake time- out. Drive does not acknowledge service transmission.	SYNC	Error	
12050	Attribute transmission too short	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
12051	Attribute transmission too long	Internal error.	SYNC	Error	
12052	Attribute cannot be changed	Element 3 is write protected. Attribute cannot be changed.	SYNC	Error	
12053	Attribute is write protected at this time	Cannot change the attribute in the current communication phase.	SYNC	Error	
12054	Service transfer not error-free	Cannot guarantee error free service channel communication with the drive	SYNC	Error	
12055	Missing telegram(s): communication interrupted	Controller didn't receive telegram from the drive(s). This error is generated if there is a timing problem. Communication interrupted due to missing telegram(s).	ASYNC	Error	Bring the ring down to CP0
12057	Wrong predefined data telegram number	Data telegram type number is out of range (07).	SYNC	Error	
12058	Wrong element number.	The element range is 17.	SYNC	Error	
12059	Communication phase 3 transition check failed	Execution of procedure was completed in the drive with error.	SYNC	Error	
12060	Communication phase 4 transition check failed	Execution of procedure was completed in the drive with error.	SYNC	Error	
12061	"Error creating MutEx for the Service channel task"	Unable to create MutEx semaphore for the Service channel task.	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12062	"Cannot create MsgQ to provide service transmission"	Unable to create message queue	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12063	"Error creating Service event semaphore"	Unable to create Service event semaphore	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12064	Can't pass communication phase 1: drive address(es) not declared.	Drive addresses must be declared.	SYNC/ASYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
12065	No units	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12066	Unit transmission too short.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12067	Unit transmission too long	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12068	Unit cannot be changed	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12069	Unit is write protected at this time	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12070	Invalid value assignment	Invalid value assignment at this statement.	SYNC	Error	
12071	Cannot proceed to communication phase 1: check baud rate and drive addresses	This error occurs if the system cannot be advanced to communication phase 1. This can happen if the baud rates in the drives and controller are not matched. It can also happen if there is a conflict between the DriveAddress property and the Simulated property. If an axis is simulated, the drive address must be set to 0. If the axis is real, the Simulated property must be set to 0 (Off).	SYNC/ASYNC	Error	
12072	The drive address has already been assigned to another axis	Each axis must be assigned a unique drive address. There may not be multiple drives with the same address.	SYNC	Error	
12073	Not valid for simulated axis	Cannot perform this command for simulated axis	SYNC	Error	
12074	Invalid request for service channel transmission	The message received by the Service channel task has an incorrect structure Internal error	SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12075	"Invalid data pointer"	Invalid pointer to internal data structure Internal error	SYNC	Error	
12076	"Uknown operation type for this command"	Internal error	SYNC	Error	
12077	Cannot redefine default	Defaultcannot be redefined.	SYNC	Error	
12078	"List is too long"	The length of the list declared by an user is too long	SYNC	Error	
12079	Cannot enable axis: System Enable property is off	A drive cannot be enabled if the System.Enable property is OFF. Set this property to on to allow the drives to be enabled, and then enable the axis.	SYNC	Error	
12080	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12081	No minimum value	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12082	Minimum value transmission too short.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12083	Minimum value transmission too long	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12084	Minimum value cannot be changed.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12085	Minimum value is write protected at this time	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12086	Error with the drive	Contact technical support.	ASYNC	Note	
12087	Return back to CP0 due to a missed telegram	Telegram missed on CP1 or CP2.	SYNC	Error	

Error #	Error Message	ssage Error Description		Severity	Immediate Action
12088	An error occurred on the drive	Drive displays an error occurrence in its status word.	ASYNC	Error	
12089	"Drive doesn't respond"	The drive does not send answer as it expected.	ASYNC	Note	
12090	Drive telegram error	Telegram received from the drive is errorneous	ASYNC	Note	
12091	Item not defined	Contact technical support.	SYNC	Error	
12092	Wrong operation data length	Wrong operation data length was specified.	SYNC	Error	
12093	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12094	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12095	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12096	RESERVED		SYNC	Fatal Fault	
12097	No maximum value.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12098	Maximum value transmission too short.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12099	Maximum value transmission too long	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC Error		
12100	Maximum value cannot be changed.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12101	Maximum value is write protected at this time	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12114	Operation data transmission too short.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12115	Operation data transmission too long.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12116	Operation data cannot be changed	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12117	Operation data are write protected at this time.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12118	Operation data are smaller than the minimum value.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12119	Operation data are greater than the maximum value.	(in accordance with IEC1491).	SYNC	Error	
12120	Invalid data (eg, invalid bit combination).	The value you try to write is out of range.	SYNC	Error	
12121	Operation data are password write- protected	Operation data are password SYNC write-protected		Error	

## Root Process (16000 through 16999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
16026	Config.prg failed	Config.prg failed, see error history and retrieve trn.err for more details.	ASYNC	Fatal Fault	Watchdog
16032	Autoexec.prg failed	Autoexec.prg failed, see error history and retrieve trn.err for more details.	ASYNC	Error	

### Encapsulation (17000 through 17999)

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
17000	Overload fault	Motor overload	ASYNC	Error	
17001	Amplifier over	Drive over temperature	ASYNC	Error	
	temperature fault	-			
17002	Motor over temperature fault	Motor over temperature	ASYNC	Error	
17003	RESERVED		ASYNC	Error	
17004	Control voltage fault (analog supply failure)	Analog supply failure (±12V)	ASYNC	Error	
17005	Feedback loss fault	FeedBack loss	ASYNC	Error	
17006	Commutation fault		ASYNC	Error	
17007	Over current fault	Drive over current fault	ASYNC	Error	
17008	Over voltage fault	Bus over voltage	ASYNC	Error	
17009	Under voltage fault	Bus under voltage	ASYNC	Error	
17010	RESERVED		ASYNC	Error	
17011	Excessive position deviation	PE>PEMAX or PE overflow fault	ASYNC	Error	
17012	Communication interface fault		ASYNC	Error	
17013	Software limit switch fault	PFB>PMAX or PFB <pmin fault<="" td=""><td>ASYNC</td><td>Error</td><td></td></pmin>	ASYNC	Error	
17014	RESERVED		ASYNC	Error	
17015	Non-volatile data memory fault	Non-volatile data memory fault	ASYNC	Error	
17016	Non-volatile data memory checksum fault	Non-volatile data memory checksum fault	ASYNC	Error	
17017	Internal Error		ASYNC	Error	
17018	Internal Error		ASYNC	Error	
17019	Internal Error		ASYNC	Error	
17020	Internal Error		ASYNC	Error	
17021	Internal Error		ASYNC	Error	
17022	Internal Error		ASYNC	Error	
17023	Invalid drive or motor configuration	No compensation fault	ASYNC	Error	
17024	Motor over speed fault	Motor over speed fault	ASYNC	Error	
17025	Internal error	•	ASYNC	Error	
17026	Internal Error		ASYNC	Error	
17027	Synchronization Error		ASYNC	Error	
17028	Synchronization Error		ASYNC	Error	
17029	External communication fault	Synchronization in DPRAM fault	ASYNC	Error	
17030	Internal firmware fault. Contact factory		ASYNC	Error	
17031	Positioner fault. Check SYS.MOTION flag	Positioner fault	ASYNC	Error	
17032	Invalid configuration mode		SYNC	Error	
17033	Cannot execute while active		SYNC	Error	
17034	Invalid configuration number		SYNC	Error	
17035	Invalid axis number		SYNC	Error	
17036	Failed to create PCA MsgQ	Failed to create PCA MsgQ	ROOT	Fault	

Error #	Error Message	Error Description	Data Type	Severity	Immediate Action
17037	Failed to create PCA task	Failed to create PCA task	ROOT	Fatal Fault	
17038	Failed to receive a message from the procedure command agent	Failed to receive a message from the procedure command agent	SYNC	Fault	
17039	Error in procedure command	Error in procedure command	SYNC	Error	
17040	Cannot execute command	Cannot execute command	SYNC	Error	
17041	Error in sending message to the procedure command agent	Error in sending message to the procedure command agent	SYNC	Fault	
17042	Error in setting or getting the priority of the procedure command agent	Error in setting or getting the priority of the procedure command agent	SYNC	Fault	
17043	Internal procedure command agent error	Internal procedure command agent error	SYNC	Fault	
17044	Value should be positive	Value should be positive	SYNC	Error	
17045	Value out of range	Value out of range	SYNC	Error	

## **Customer Support**

Danaher Motion Kollmorgen technical documention is updated periodically and may be changed without notice. The latest documentation can be found on our website.

For information on this product or where to purchase near you, contact: your local distributor. To locate a distributor near you, go to www.MotionVillage.com/customer\_service/distributor.

Danaher Motion Customer Support - Radford 501 West Main Street Radford, VA 24141 Continental US Customers: 1-800-777-3786 International Customers: (815) 226-3100

Technical Support Fax: (540) 731-5641 Sales Support Fax: (540) 731-5679 or (540) 731-5668 Email: servo@kollmorgen.com Website: www.MotionVillage.com

# **APPENDIX A**

## **Motor Pinouts**

The SERVOSTAR SC can be mated with a variety of motors. Cable sets (motor and feedback) can be purchased directly from Kollmorgen to provide you with a complete plug-n-play system. However, for those who wish to manufacture their own cable sets, this appendix provides pinout information between the SERVOSTAR's power and feedback connections and the motor receptacles for most of Kollmorgen's motor products.

### Motor Power Connections

SERVOSTAR	GOLDLINE B, M, EB & XT			D	RBHR/ RBE(H)	
DRIVE CONNECTIONS	B/M/EB Motor Receptacle	XT Motor Receptacle	WIRE Color (Winding to Receptacle)	Motor Receptacle	Wire Color (Winding to Receptacle)	Wire Color
MA	Pin A	3	Brown	Pin 3	Black	Red
MB	Pin B	4	Red	Pin 4	Red	White
MC	Pin C	1	White	Pin 1	White	Black
GND	Pin D	2	Green/Yellow	Pin 2	Green	

### **SC1R RESOLVER Connection**

SERVOSTAR		<b>GOLDLINE B, M, EB, XT</b>			Γ	RBHR	
		XT 50X & 70X	ХТ	Wire Color (from resolver to	Resolver	Wire Color (from resolver to	
SC	B/M/EB		30X	motor receptacle)	Connector	motor receptacle)	Wire Color
Pin 1	Pin A	Pin A	Pin 3	Black	Pin 3	Black	Yellow
Pin 2	Pin B	Pin B	Pin 7	Red	Pin 7	Red	Blue
Pin 3 (shield)							
Pin 4	Pin D	Pin D	Pin 8	Yellow	Pin 8	Yellow	Red
Pin 5	Pin C	Pin C	Pin 4	Blue	Pin 4	Blue	Black
Pin 6 (Shield)							
Pin 14 (Shield)							
Pin 15	Pin F	Pin F	Pin 5	Yellow/White	Pin 5	Yellow/White	Red / White
Pin 16	Pin E	Pin E	Pin 9	Red/White	Pin 9	Red/White	Yellow / White
Pin 13	Pin T	Pin R	Pin 2	Yellow	Pin 2	Blue	
Pin 25	Pin U	Pin S	Pin 6	Yellow	Pin 6	Red	
Pin 12 (Shield)							

SERVOSTAR	GOLDLINE B, M, EB & XT			& XT	RBE(H)
SC	En	coder Recepta	cle	Wire Color (at Motor Receptacle)	Encoder Receptacle
	B, M, EB Series MS threaded	XT Series MS Threaded	XT Series Euro Style		
Pin 1	Pin A	Pin A	Pin 1	Blue	Pin 6
Pin 2	Pin M	Pin M	Pin 2	Blue / Black	Pin 5
Pin 3 (shield)					
Pin 4	Pin B	Pin B	Pin 3	Green	Pin 8
Pin 5	Pin C	Pin C	Pin 4	Green / Black	pin 7
Pin 6 (Shield)					
Pin 7 & 8	Pin S	Pin S	Pin 7	Red	Pin 2
Pin 9	Pin F	Pin F	Pin 17	Brown	
Pin 10	Pin H	Pin H	Pin 16	Gray	
Pin 11	Pin K	Pin K	Pin 15	White	
Pin 12 (Shield)					
Pin 13	Pin T	Pin T	Pin 8	Yellow	
Pin 14 (Shield )					
Pin 15	Pin D	Pin D	Pin 5	Violet	Pin 10
Pin 16	Pin E	Pin E	Pin 6	Violet / Black	Pin 9
Pin 18,19 & 20	Pin R	Pin R	Pin 10	Black	Pin 3
Pin 22	Pin G	(see note 1)	(see note 1)	(see note 1)	(see note 1)
Pin 23	Pin J	(see note 1)	(see note 1)	(see note 1)	(see note 1)
Pin 24	Pin L	(see note 1)	(see note 1)	(see note 1)	(see note 1)
Pin 25	Pin U	Pin U	Pin 9	Yellow	

## **SC1E Encoder Connection**

NOTE 1. Must be shorted to C 2 pin 18 for proper operation

# **APPENDIX B**

The detailed installation instructions provided here assume several things. First, they assume that you are using a stand-alone PC with a minimum operating system of Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 3, or Windows 95 Version 4.0, or Windows98 Version 4.10 installed in the default directories. The instructions also assume that you have the operating system diskettes or CD-ROM on hand before you begin installation.

If you are using a networked PC, you will need to have the network operating system diskettes or CD-ROM available or have a system administrator with you who would have access to these files.

## **BASIC Moves Development Studio**

You will want to install BASIC Moves Development Studio on your PC as BASIC Moves Development Studio is used to run programs which operate the SERVOSTAR SC. BASIC Moves Development Studio is distributed on the PSP CD-ROM.



## If you have installed MotionSuite, do NOT install BASIC Moves Development Studio.

During the installation you will be asked a series of questions that you should respond to appropriately to ensure proper operation of the SERVO**STAR** SC. You will be guided through the setup by the installation setup program located on the CD-ROM.

Before you begin the installation, close all other applications as they may interfere with the installation process. On a Windows NT system, you may be logged in as any user. It is not necessary to be logged in as the Administrator.

1. To start the installation, place the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive. The setup program should automatically start.



#### If not, run AUTORUN.EXE from the CD-ROM.

Run	?×
5	Type the name of a program, folder, document, or Internet resource, and Windows will open it for you.
<u>O</u> pen:	D:\AUTORUN.exe
	OK Cancel <u>B</u> rowse

- 2. Select Kollmorgen.
- 3. Select SERVOSTAR SC.
- 4. Select Install BASIC Moves. You will see the Welcome screen:



5. Click Next.

鐞 Read Me File		×
	Basic Moves Development Studio v3.0.3 Ethernet Control v3.0.3 Released: Jan 19, 2002 BASIC Moves Development Studio * New SSSC Reference File Added	A V
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> >	Cancel

- 6. Verify that you are installing the correct software.
- 7. Click Next.

🛃 Choose Destination L	ocation	×
	Setup will install BASIC Moves Development Studio in the following folder. To install into a different folder, click Browse, and select another folder. You can choose not to install BASIC Moves Development Studio by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.	
	Destination Folder C:\\KMTG Motion Suite\BASIC Moves Browse	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> > Cancel	

8. If you wish to change the destination location, click Browse. Otherwise, go to step 8.

Select Destination Directory	×
C:\Program Files\KMTG Motion Suite\	ОК
CAN CAN Files	Cancel
👝 KMTG Motion Suite	
🛅 api 🛅 BASIC Moves	
🛅 servostar	

- 9. Select the destination directory by highlighting (as shown above) and click OK.
- 10. Click Next.



- 11. Choose the components you wish to install. Kollmorgen recommends selecting all the components.
- 12. Click Next.

覺 Select Program Manag	er Group	X
	Enter the name of the Program Manager group to add BASIC Moves Development Studio icons to:	
	KMTG Motion Suite	1
	Accessories Adobe Adobe Acrobat 4.0 Baan IMSI HiJaak 5.0 KMTG Motion Suite McAfee VirusScan Microsoft Office Tools New Visio Drawing Novell Shiva VPN SnagIt StartUp WinZip	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel	-

- 13. Select the group for BASIC Moves Development Studio.
- 14. Click Next.



15. Click Next to begin installing BASIC Moves.

Current File Copying API Installer: C:\\TEMP\GLF11D2.TMP.exe
Time Remaining 0 minutes 12 seconds
 < Back Next > Cancel

16. When complete, you will have to choose if you wish to add the icon to your Desktop.

Add BASIC Moves Dev	velopment Studi 🔀
Would you like to add Development Studio i	the BASIC Moves con to the Desktop?
Yes	No

17. If you choose Yes, the icon is added to your desktop.



18. Your configuration files will be updated next.



19. Wait for this process to be completed.



20. Edit the IP address file only performed if the "Serial and Ethernet Communication Support" option was checked. If you select No, go to step 21.



If you are using Windowds95/98, install the "Serial and Ethernet Control", but do not configure the IP file at this time. Select "No" at this screen.

- 21. Click Add.
- 22. Enter the available IP addresses and corresponding Subnet Masks. If you want to edit the IP address file at a later time (e.g., you do not know what IP address(es) to assign), click "No" and the installation will conclude. To perform communications configuration at a later time, execute the "IP Pool Editor" from the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite > IP Pool Editor).
- 23. If you checked the option, KMTG Motion Development Kit, you will now begin that installation process. If KMTG Motion Development Kit was checked, go to step 32.



24. Click Next.

Choose Destination Loca	ation	×
	Setup will install KMTG Motion Development Kit in the following folder.	
	To install into a different folder, click Browse, and select another folder.	
	You can choose not to install KMTG Motion Development Kit by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.	
	Destination Folder C:\\KMTG Motion Development Kit\ <u>Br</u> owse	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

25. If you wish to change the destination location, click Browse. Otherwise, go to step 26.



- 26. Select the destination directory by highlighting (as shown above) and click OK.
- 27. Click Next.



- 28. Choose the components you wish to install. Kollmorgen recommends selecting all the components.
- 29. Click Next.



- 30. Select the group for KMTG Motion Developer Group.
- 31. Click Next.

Start Installation		×
	You are now ready to install KMTG Motion Development Kit. Press the Next button to begin the installation or the Back button to reenter the installation information.	
	< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel	_

32. Click Next to begin the installation.

La Current File Copying API Installer: C:\\TEMP\GLF11D2.TMP.exe All Files Time Remaining 0 minutes 12 seconds
< Back. Next > Cancel

33. This may take several minutes.

Installation Complete		×
	KMTG Motion Development Kit has been successfully installed. Press the Finish button to exit this installation.	
	< Back Finish > Cancel	

34. Click Finish.

The installation process has created a program group and folder in the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite) with links to the BASC Moves Development Studio application and created an icon on the Desktop (if you chose this option). However, you must now install the communication support you wish to use. Go to either the Installing Ethernet Communication Support or Installing Serial Communication Support section.

## MOTIONLINK

You will want to install **MOTIONLINK** on your PC as **MOTIONLINK** is used to configure the SERVOSTAR SC. The **MOTIONLINK** program is located on the PSP CD-ROM.



If you have installed MotionSuite, do NOT install MOTIONLINK.

1. Insert the SERVOSTAR PSP CD-ROM. The CD-ROM should Autorun.



If not, run AUTORUN.EXE from the CD-ROM.

Run		? ×
<u></u>	Type the name of a program, folder, document, or resource, and Windows will open it for you.	Internet
<u>O</u> pen:	D:\AUTORUN.exe	•
	OK Cancel <u>B</u> rov	vse

- 2. Select Kollmorgen.
- 3. Select SERVOSTAR SC.

4. Select Install **MOTIONLINK**. You will see the **MOTIONLINK** Welcome screen.



5. Verify that you are installing the correct software and click Next.

<b>Choose Destination Loca</b>	ition	×
	Setup will install SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK in the following folder. To install into a different folder, click Browse, and select another folder. You can choose not to install SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.	
	Destination Folder C:\\KMTG Motion Suite\SERVOSTAR\ <u>Browse</u>	]
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> Cancel	

6. If you wish to change the destination location, click Browse. Otherwise, go to step 8.



- 7. Select the destination directory by highlighting (as shown above) and click OK.
- 8. Click Next.

Select Components		×
	In the options list below, select the checkboxes for the that you would like to have installed. The disk space f reflect the requirements of the options you have select	options ields ed.
	SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK	12335 k
	SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Documentation	2064 k
	Serial and Ethernet Communication Support	288 k
	S	elect All
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> C	Cancel

- 9. Choose the components you wish to install. Kollmorgen recommends selecting all the components.
- 10. Click Next.



- 11. Select the group for **MOTIONLINK** to reside in.
- 12. Click Next.

Start Installation		×
	You are now ready to install SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK .	
	Press the Next button to begin the installation or the Back button to reenter the installation information.	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> > Cancel	

13. Click Next to begin installing **MOTIONLINK**.

Installing	Current File Copying Common Control Upgrad C:\\TEMP\GLFC2E2.TMP.exe	Le:
	All Files Time Remaining 0 minutes 18 se	conds

14. The program is installed. You can watch the progress on the screen.



- 15. The system configuration is updated. Wait for this to finish.
- 16. Once the components are installed, you must choose if you wish to edit the IP address file.



17. If you select No, the controls will be registered. Go to step 20. If you select Yes, continue with step 17.



18. Editing the IP address file is only performed if the "Serial and Ethernet Communication Support" option was checked.



If you are using Windowds95/98, install the "Serial and Ethernet Control", but do not configure the IP file at this time. Select "No" at this screen.

- 19. Click Add.
- 20. Enter the available IP addresses and corresponding Subnet Masks. If you want to edit the IP address file at a later time (e.g., you do not know what IP address(es) to assign), click "No" and the installation will conclude. To perform communications configuration at a later time, execute the "IP Pool Editor" from the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite > IP Pool Editor).
- 21. You should now get a successful completion screen.

😼 Installation Complete		×
8	SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK has been successfully installed.	
	Press the Finish button to exit this installation.	
	Add SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK to the Start Menu.	
	Add SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK to Desktop	
	🔽 View Readme File	
		_
	< Back Finish > Cancel	

- 22. You will need to decide if you wish to add **MOTIONLINK** to your Start Menu and your Desktop. You can also view the README file once you click "Finish."
- 23. If you chose to add **MOTIONLINK** to your Desktop, you will see the icon on your desktop.



The installation process has created a program group and folder in the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite) with links to the **MOTIONLINK** application and created an icon on the Desktop (if you chose this option). **MOTIONLINK** installation is now complete. However, you must now install the communication support you wish to use. Go to either Installing Ethernet Communication Support or Installing Serial Communication Support.

## **MotionSuite**

Installing MotionSuite on your PC allows you to configure the drive as well as program the controller. The MotionSuite program is located on the PSP CD-ROM or can be downloaded from our website.



If you are installing MotionSuite, you do NOT need to install either MOTIONLINK or BASIC Moves Development Studio as both of these programs run in MotionSuite.

1. Insert the PSP CD-ROM. It should AutoRun.



If not, run AUTORUN.EXE from the CD-ROM.

Run		? ×
2	Type the name of a program, folder, document, or Int resource, and Windows will open it for you.	ernet
<u>O</u> pen:	D:\AUTORUN.exe	•
	OK Cancel <u>B</u> rowse	B

- 2. Select Kollmorgen.
- 3. Select SERVOSTAR SC.

4. Select Install MotionSuite. Click on it and you will see the Welcome screen.



5. Be sure you have closed out all other Window applications before continuing. Click Next.

Choose Destination Loca	ation
	Setup will install MotionSuite in the following folder. To install into a different folder, click Browse, and select another folder. You can choose not to install MotionSuite by clicking Cancel to exit Setup.
	Destination Folder C:\Program Files\KMTG Motion Suite\ <u>Br</u> owse
·	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> Cancel

6. If you wish to change the destination location, click Browse. Otherwise, go to step 8.



- 7. Select the destination directory by highlighting (as shown above) and click OK.
- 8. Click Next.

Select Components		×
	In the options list below, select the checkbox that you would like to have installed. The dist reflect the requirements of the options you hav BASIC Moves Development Studio BASIC Moves Documentation BASIC Moves Sample Projects Ethernet and Serial Communication Supp ServoStar MotionLink	es for the options < space fields ve selected. ort
	Disk Space Required: Disk Space Remaining:	7750 k 3537509 k
	< <u>B</u> ack	Cancel

- 9. Uncheck any components you do NOT wish installed.
- 10. Click Next.



- 11. Choose the Program Manager Group you wish to store these program in. If you are unsure, leave the default.
- 12. Click Next.



13. Click Next to begin installing MotionSuite.

Installing	Current File Copying Common Control Upgrade: C:\\TEMP\GLFC2E2.TMP.exe
	All Files Time Remaining 0 minutes 18 seconds

14. The program will be installed. You can watch the progress on the screen.



15. The system configuration will be updated. Wait for this to finish.



16. You are asked if you wish to edit the IP file. If selecting No, go to step 20.



If you are using Windowds95/98, install the "Serial and Ethernet Control", but do not configure the IP file at this time. Select "No" at this screen.

- 17. If you selected Yes, click Add.
- 18. Enter the available IP addresses and corresponding Subnet Masks. If you want to edit the IP address file at a later time (e.g., you do not know what IP address(es) to assign), click "No" and the installation will conclude. To perform communications configuration at a later time, execute the "IP Pool Editor" from the Start menu (Start > Program Files > KMTG Motion Suite > IP Pool Editor).

Installation Complete		×
	MotionSuite has been successfully installed.	
	Press the Finish button to exit this installation.	
	Add MotionSuite to the Start Menu	
3.0	Add MotionSuite to Desktop	
	Add MotionLink to the Start Menu.	
	Add MotionLink to Desktop	
	Add BasicMoves to the Start Menu.	
	Add BasicMoves to Desktop	
	< <u>B</u> ack. <u>Finish</u> > Cancel	]

- 19. Uncheck any of the options above you do NOT wish installed.
- 20. Click Finish.



21. The MotionSuite desktop icon will be seen on your desktop if you installed it there.



22. The BASIC Moves desktop icon will be seen on your desktop if you installed it there.



23. The **MOTIONLINK** desktop icon will be seen on your desktop if you installed it there.

MotionSuite installation is now complete. However, you must now install the communication support you wish to use. Go to either the Installing Ethernet Communication Support or Installing Serial Communication Support section for MotionSuite.

## Communication

In order to communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, your PC must be connected to the Ethernet port (C6 connector) or the serial port (C7 connector). C8 is reserved for the Human Machine Interface (HMI).

## Installing Ethernet Communication Support

In order to use Ethernet, a unique IP address must be used for each SERVOSTAR SC placed on the network. You will also need to obtain the proper subnet maks for the IP address.

You <u>do not</u> have to communicate via serial first to assign the address. Kollmorgen provides a utility called the "IP Pool Editor" which allows you to maintain a list of the IP addresses that are assigned to your controllers. Follow the directions below to use this utility.



If you are using a networked PC, you will need to have the network operating system diskettes or CD-ROM available or have a system administrator with you who would have access to these files.

### USING BASIC MOVES AND MOTIONLINK

In order to use TCP/IP, you must first install both the **MOTIONLINK** and BASIC Moves Development Studio applications with the steps above, selecting Ethernet Control from the component list).

1. Launch the IP Pool File Editor.

C	IP Pool File Configuration D	)ialog	×
	IP Address	Subnet Mask	OK )
			<u>C</u> ancel
			<u>H</u> elp
			<u>A</u> dd
			<u>D</u> elete
			<u>0</u> pen
			<u>D</u> elete <u>O</u> pen

- 2. Click Add.
- 3. Enter the available IP addresses and corresponding Subnet Masks assigned by your network administrator for your SERVOSTAR SC(s).

Enter IP Address and Subnet Mas	sk 🔀
IP Address:	OK
· · ·	Cancel
Subnet Address:	
· · ·	

#### 4. Click OK.

This completes the Ethernet configuration.

### USING MOTIONSUITE

In order to use TCP/IP, you must first install MotionSuite with the steps above, selecting Ethernet Control from the component list).

1. Open MotionSuite.



2. Click IP Pool Edit. There will be no IP Addresses shown if none have been configured.

IP Pool File Configuration D	Jialog		×
Current IP address associated wi	th the controller —	Change IP	OK <u>C</u> ancel
IP Address	Subnet Mask		Help
			<u>A</u> dd
			<u>D</u> elete
			<u>0</u> pen
,			

3. If an IP Address has been configured, you will see that information displayed.

IP Pool File Configuration D	ialog	×
Current IP address associated wi	th the controller Change IP	OK <u>C</u> ancel
IP Address 10.1.101.15	Subnet Mask 255.255.0.0	
		<u>D</u> elete
		<u>0</u> pen
<u> </u>		

#### 4. Click Add.

Enter IP Address and Subnet Mask		
IP Address:	OK	
	Cancel	
Subnet Address:		

- 5. Enter the appropriate IP address and subnet mask.
- 6. Click OK.

This completes the Ethernet configuration.

### EXAMPLE OF CHOOSING AN IP ADDRESS

The following section contains an example of how to configure a Windows 98 computer to communicate over Ethernet with a SERVOSTAR SC. The method of configuring Windows 95 and NT 4.0 (SP3 or higher) is same, but the screenshots contained in this example may be slightly different.

Each Ethernet card (or adapter) in your computer requires a base IP address to communicate using the TCP/IP protocol. To set or check the IP address of an Ethernet card on your computer you will have to open "Network" in the Windows 98 control panel.
Network ?×
Configuration Identification Access Control
The following network components are installed:
Fast Infrared Protocol -> SMC IrCC (Infrared Communicatic
TCP/IP -> Dial-Up Adapter
TCP/IP -> FE575C-3Com 10/100 LAN CardBus-Fast Ethe
File and printer sharing for Microsoft Networks
Add Remove Properties
Primary Network Logon:
Novell NetWare Client
<u>File and Print Sharing</u>
Description
TCP/IP is the protocol you use to connect to the Internet and wide-area networks.

Select the TCP/IP protocol that is bound to the Ethernet adapter that needs to be configured. Click the "Properties" button.

TCP/IP Proper	ties		? ×		
Bindings	Advanced	I N S Configuration	etBIOS		
DNS Configuration       Gateway       WINS Configuration       IP Address         An IP address can be automatically assigned to this computer.       If your network does not automatically assign IP addresses, ask your network administrator for an address, and then type it in the space below.       If Obtain an IP address automatically					
P Address:	address 1111.0	. 0 . 1			
S <u>u</u> bnet Mas	c 255.255	i.255. O			
		OK	Cancel		

In this example the IP address of the Ethernet card on this computer is set to "111.0.0.1". Also a Subnet Mask must be defined. The Subnet Mask, which looks similar to an IP address, provides a "mask" of the significant bits in an IP address that define a network. In this example we are using a Subnet Mask of "255.255.255.0".

To calculate your Subnet address you must perform a Boolean AND of your Ethernet address and your Subnet Mask. This process is illustrated in the following example:

	Decimal	Binary Equivalent
IP Address	111.0.0.1	01101111 .00000000. 00000000. 0000001
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	11111111. 11111111. 11111111. 0000000

Perform a Logical AND operation on the IP address and Subnet mask.

01101111 0000000 0000000 0000001

 $\underline{11111111} \ \underline{1111111} \ \underline{11111111} \ \underline{0000000}$ 

01101111 0000000 0000000 xxxxxx

In this example the subnet address of this computer is:

011011111 00000000 00000000 xxxxxxx = 111.0.0

The unique identifier of this computer on the network is defined by the remaining "unmasked" bits of the IP address. In this example, the unique identifier for this computer is "1".

The next step is to define a "pool" of addresses that the Kollmorgen API (used by BASIC Moves and **MOTIONLINK**) can use to assign addresses to the SERVOSTAR SCs that are on your network. You will need to open the "IP Pool Editor" program that was installed with BASIC Moves or **MOTIONLINK** under the KMTG Motion Suite directory in your Start menu. Many applications will connect directly from the computer to one SERVOSTAR SC. In this case, your IP Pool requires only one address. If you are connecting the host computer to multiple SERVOSTAR SCs, the IP Pool must contain a minimum of one address for each SERVOSTAR SC located on the network. In this example, the computer is using IP address, 111.0.0.1, leaves addresses 111.0.0.2 to 111.0.0.254 available to be used in the IP Pool.

Example: If you have 4 SERVOSTAR SCs on your network there must be at least 4 addresses in the IP Pool.

I	IP Pool File Config	uration Dialog	×
	Current IP address associated wi	th the controller	OK <u>C</u> ancel
	IP Address	Subnet Mask	<u>H</u> elp
	111.0.0.2 111.0.0.3	255.255.255.0 255.255.255.0	<u>A</u> dd
	111.0.0.4	255.255.255.0 255.255.255.0	<u>D</u> elete
			<u> </u>

To add an IP Address to the IP Pool click the <u>A</u>dd button in the IP Pool Editor.

Enter IP Address and S	ubnet 🗙
IP Address:	OK
111 . 0 . 0 . 6	Cancel
Subnet Address:	
255 . 255 . 255 . 0	



If you are connecting through an office factory LAN network, you must make sure that you select addresses that are not used elsewhere in the LAN. Contact your network administrator to determine the acceptable addresses that can be used.

# **Installing Serial Communication Support**

For serial communications, Kollmorgen uses Windows Dial-Up Networking (DUN) to connect to the SERVOSTAR SC. Depending on your operating system, the installation procedure is different. Select the appropriate procedure based on your operating system.

Windows NT – pages 162 through 175 Windows 95 – pages 175 through 184 Windows 98 – pages 184 through 195 Windows 2000 – pages 195 through 205

# WINDOWS NT

- 1. Make sure you are using Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 3.
- 2. Connect a null modem cable from the PC to the SERVOSTAR SC connector C7. Kollmorgen provides a null modem cable in the connector kit for the SERVOSTAR SC.

# ADD MODEM

1. Open the Control Panel from the "Start Menu, Settings, Control Panel".



- 2. Select "Modems".
  - A. If you have modems installed on your PC, the dialog box lists all the installed modems.

Modems Properties
General Diagnostics
The following modems are set up on this computer:
3Com Megahertz Telephony 3CXM756 Modem
Add Remove Properties
Dialing preferences Dialing from: Radford
Click Dialing Properties to modify how your calls are dialed.
Dialing Properties
OK Cancel

B. Click Add.... The "Install New Modem" wizard appears.

Install New Modem	×
	<ul> <li>Windows NT will now try to detect your modem. Before continuing, you should:</li> <li>1. If the modem is attached to your computer, make sure it is turned on.</li> <li>2. Quit any programs that may be using the modem.</li> <li>Click Next when you are ready to continue.</li> <li>Image: Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list.</li> </ul>
	< Back Next > Cancel

- C. Check the box, "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list."
- D. Click "Next >".

Install New Modem	×
Click the manul or if you have a	acturer and model of your modem. If your modem is not listed, in installation disk, click Have Disk.
Manufacturers: Standard Modem Type (VoiceView Modem Type 3× Acceex Accer Altrop	Modeļs Dial-Up Networking Serial Cable between 2 PCs Standard 300 bps Modem Standard 1200 bps Modem Standard 2400 bps Modem Standard 9600 bps Modem Standard 14400 bps Modem Standard 19200 bps Modem
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

E. Click "Have Disk..".

Install Fre	om Disk	×
_	Insert the manufacturer's installation disk into the drive selected, and then click OK.	OK Cancel
	Copy manufacturer's files from:	Browse

- F. The list box initially displays C:\. Click "Browse.." to locate the file.
- G. Change to C:\Program Files\KMTG Motion Suite\API. The file you are looking for is called KMNLMDM.INF.

Locate File					? ×
Look jn:	Api 🔁	-	£	Ċ	
📓 kmnlmdm.	inf		_	_	
File <u>n</u> ame:	kmnlmdm.inf				<u>O</u> pen
Files of <u>t</u> ype:	Setup Information (*.inf)		~		Cancel

- H. Select "KMNLMDM.INF".
- I. Click "Open".



J. Click "OK".

Install N	ew Modem 🔀
٩	Click the manufacturer and model of your modem. If your modem is not listed, or if you have an installation disk, click Have Disk.
Mode <u>l</u> s Kollmo	igen SSSC or SSMC connection
	<u>H</u> ave Disk < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

- K. Select "Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection" (or the name of the connection you created).
- L. Click "Next >" to install the serial ports.

Install New Modem		×
	You have selected the following modem: Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection On which ports do you want to install it? C All ports C Selected ports COM1 COM2	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext⇒ Canc	el

- M. Select option "Selected ports".
- N. Select COM1 (or any other available port that you wish to use to connect).
- O. Click "Next >" to get to the finish screen.



P. Click "Finish". You should now see the new modem.

Modems Properties	? ×
General	
The following modems are set up on this compute	r:
Modem Attached 1	To
Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection COM1	
	- 1
Add <u>R</u> emove <u>Properties</u>	
Dialing Preferences	
Dialing from: New Location	
Use Dialing Properties to modify how your calls are dialed.	
Dialing Properties	
	_
Close Cano	el

# **EDIT MODEM PROPERTIES**

- 1. To edit modem properties, select the modem titled "Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection".
- 2. Click "Properties".

Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection Properties 💦 🍞	<
General Connection	
Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection	
Port: COM1	
- <u>S</u> peaker volume	l
Low High	
Maximum speed	l
38400	
Only connect at this speed	
OK Cancel	

- 3. Go to the "Maximum speed" list box and select "38400".
- 4. Select "Connection".

Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection Properties ? X
Connection preferences
Data bits: 8
Parity: None
Stop bits: 1
Call preferences
☐ <u>W</u> ait for dial tone before dialing
<u>Cancel the call if not connected within</u> secs
Disconnect a call if idle for more than mins
Port Settings Advanced
OK Cancel

5. Click the "Advanced" button.

Advanced Connection Settings	<u>?</u> ×
Use error control           Eequired to connect           Compress data           Use cellular protocol	Use flow control Use flow control Use flow control
- Modulation type-	
E <u>x</u> tra settings	
Rec <u>o</u> rd a log file	OK Cancel

- 6. **UNCHECK** box "Use flow control".
- 7. Click OK. You will be back at Modems Properties.
- 8. Click "Close".
- 9. At this point, if Remote Access Service (RAS) has previously been installed, the dialog will say, "Dial-Up Networking needs to be configured". If you see this message, go to Setup Remote Access Service (RAS).

# ADD NETWORK SERVICES

- 1. If you do not see the message, open the Control Panel by selecting "Start, Settings, Control Panel".
- 2. Open "Network".
- 3. Select tab "Services".

etwork			?
Identification Se	rvices Protocols	Adapters   Bind	ings
Network Service	s:		
Server	IN SmartAgent P owser t for Windows NT buted Print Servic station Manager uration	C Software	
Workstation	I	I	<u> </u>
<u>A</u> dd	<u>R</u> emove	Properties	<u>U</u> pdate
3Com Distribut	ed Remote Monito	oring Smart Agent	
Network Acces	s <u>O</u> rder		
		OK	Cancel

4. Click "Add..."

Select Network Service	? ×
Click the Network Service that you want t you have an installation disk for this comp	o install, then click OK. If onent, click Have Disk.
Remote Access Service	-
🔜 Remote management	_
🔜 RIP for Internet Protocol	
🔜 RPC Configuration	-
DDC support for Dopuon	
	<u>H</u> ave Disk
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	OK Cancel

- 5. Select "Remote Access Service" from the list box.
- 6. Click "OK".

# REMOTE ACCESS SERVICE (RAS)

1. If RAS has not been installed on your machine, you will be able to install RAS on your machine. If RAS has been installed on your machine, begin at this screen at step 4.

Windows	s NT Setup	×
f	Setup needs to copy some Windows NT files. Setup will look for the files in the location specified below. If you want Setup to look in a different place, type the new location. When the location is correct, click Continue.	Continue Cancel
	c:\i386\	

- 2. The text box displays "c:\i386". This should be set to the default Windows NT location for these files. This may be your CDROM if Windows NT was not installed from the hard drive. If the files have been moved to a different location, enter the path for the new location.
- 3. Click "Continue". The Add RAS Device box appears.

11	
Add RAS Device	×
RAS Capable <u>D</u> evices:	OK
COM1 - Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC cor	Cancel
	<u>H</u> elp
	Install <u>M</u> odem
	Install X25 <u>P</u> ad

- 4. Open the list box and select "COM1 Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection".
- 5. Click "OK".

Remote Acc	ess Setup			×
<u>P</u> ort	Device		Туре	
COM1	Kollmorgen SSS	C or SSMC c	Modem (unimodem)	Continue
				Cancel
				<u>N</u> etwork
				<u>H</u> elp
<u>A</u> dd	<u>R</u> emove <u>C</u>	onfigure	Clone	

6. Click "Network..."

Network Configuration	×
Dial out Protocols:	OK Cancel
	<u>H</u> elp

- 7. Ensure that box "TCP/IP" is checked. If other boxes are checked, leave them checked.
- 8. Click "OK".
- 9. Click "Configure..."

Configure	e Port Usage	×
Port: Device:	COM1 Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection	OK Cancel
Port Us © Dia © <u>P</u> ia	age Ilout only ceive calls only Ilout and Receive calls	<u>H</u> elp

- 10. Select option "Dial out only".
- 11. Click "OK".
- 12. Click "OK" again in the Remote Access Setup dialog.
- 13. Windows NT requires that you reboot at this point. You must reboot your computer by clicking "Yes". After rebooting continue at Setup Dial-Up Networking.

Network	Settings Change 🛛 🔀
<u>.</u>	You must shut down and restart your computer before the new settings will take effect. Do you want to restart your computer now?
	<u>Yes</u> <u>N</u> o

### **DIAL-UP NETWORKING**

- 1. To set up Dial-Up Networking, open Dial-Up Networking by selecting "Start, Programs, Accessories, Dial-Up Networking".
- 2. If the phonebook is empty, a dialog appears to tell you this. Otherwise, go to step 7.

Dial-Up I	Vetworking 🛛 🗙	
٩	The phonebook is empty. Press OK to add an entry.	
	OK	

- 3. Click "OK". This may launch the "New Phonebook Entry Wizard".
- 4. Enter "SSSC/SSMC connection" for the new phonebook entry. Note, this name needs to be entered exactly as specified ("SSSC/SSMC connection").
- 5. Check the box "I know all about phonebook..."
- 6. Click "Finish". The "New Phonebook Entry" dialog displays.

Solution States Contract Contract Contract States S	? ×
	Phonebook entry to dial: SP connection ▼ New More ▼
	Phone number pre <u>v</u> iew: Dialing fr <u>o</u> m: New Location
	<u>D</u> ial <u>C</u> lose

7. Click "New.."

Edit Phonebool	Entry			? ×
Basic	Server	Script	Security	X.25
<u>E</u> ntry name: Co <u>m</u> ment:	SSSC/SS	MC connection		
Phone <u>n</u> umber	⊡ <u>U</u> se Te	elephony dialing	properties	<u>A</u> lternates
<u>D</u> ial using:	Kollmorge	n SSSC or SSM other port if bu:	1C connec <b>_▼</b> sy	<u>C</u> onfigure
			ОК	Cancel

- 8. Select the "Basic" tab.
- 9. Go to the "Entry name" box and enter "SSSC/SSMC connection" (if not already entered). The name must be entered exactly as specified, such as "SSSC/SSMC connection".
- 10. Go to the list box "Dial using".
- 11. Select "Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection".
- 12. Click "Configure".

Modem Configuration 🛛 📪 🗙			
Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection (C			
Initial speed (bps): 38400			
Hardware Features			
Enable hardware <u>f</u> low control			
Enable modern error control			
Enable modem <u>c</u> ompression			
Disable modem <u>s</u> peaker			
OK Cancel			

- 13. Go to the list box "Initial speed (bps)" and select 38400.
- 14. In the "Hardware Features" checkboxes, uncheck all options.
- 15. Click "OK". You return to the previous dialog box.
- 16. Select tab "Server".

w Phoneboo	ok Entry					?
Basic	Server	Script	T	Security		X.25
Dial-up <u>s</u> erve	r type:					
SLIP: Interne	et				-	
-Network pr	otocols					
	Р	Т <u>С</u> Р.	/IP S	ettings		
🗖 [PX/S	PX compatible				-	
∏ <u>N</u> etBE	UI					
- Enable or	fillione compros	ninn				
Enable so	ntware compres	sium				
_ Enable P	FF <u>L</u> LF extensit	<i>i</i> ms				
				OK		Cancel
			_			

- 17. Make sure SLIP: Internet is selected.
- 18. Check "TCP/IP" in "Network protocols".
- 19. Click "TCP/IP Settings.." to edit the TCP/IP settings.

SLIP TCP/IP Settings	? ×
IP <u>a</u> ddress:	91.0.0.1
Name server addresses:	
Primary <u>D</u> NS:	0.0.0.0
Secondary D <u>N</u> S:	0.0.0.0
Primary <u>W</u> INS:	0.0.0.0
Secondary WINS:	0.0.0.0
Force IP header <u>c</u> om Use default gateway Frame size: 1006	on remote network OK Cancel

- 20. Enter in "IP address" 91.0.0.1.
- 21. In the checkboxes, uncheck both "Force IP header compression" and "Use default gateway on remote network".
- 22. Click "OK". You will be back at the main screen.
- 23. Select the "Security" tab.

Ne	w Phonebo	ok Entry			? ×
	Basic	Server	Script	Security	X.25
	- Authentica	tion and encrypt	ion policy		_
	<ul> <li>Accept</li> </ul>	t any authentica	ition including <u>c</u>	lear text	
	C Accep	t only <u>e</u> ncrypted	authentication		
	C Accep	t only <u>M</u> icrosoft	encrypted authe	entication	
	Require data encryption				
	Use current username and password				
	Unsave password				
-					Canad

- 24. Select only the option "Accept any authentication including clear text".
- 25. Click "OK".

🥾 Dial-Up Networking	? 🗙
	Phonebook entry to dial: SSSC/SSMC connection
	Phone number pre <u>v</u> iew: Dialing fr <u>o</u> m: New Location
	[]

26. Click "Dial".

Connect to S	SSC/SSMC connection 💦 🗙
Enter a user remote netwo	name and password with access to the ork domain.
<u>U</u> ser name:	
Password:	
<u>D</u> omain:	
	☑ <u>S</u> ave password
	OK Cancel

- 27. It does not matter what entries are present in this dialog. Check the box "Save password" so that you will not be presented with this dialog next time you dial.
- 28. Click "OK". You should connect to the controller. If not, check that you performed these settings correctly.

This completes the serial communications configuration.

# WINDOWS95

- 1. Make sure you are running Windows95 Version 4.00.095a or higher.
- 2. Connect null modem cable to SC.

#### ADD MODEM

1. Open the Control Panel from the Windows Start Menu > Settings > Control Panel.



2. Double Click on the icon "Modems".

Install New Modem	
	<ul> <li>Windows will now try to detect your modem. Before continuing, you should:</li> <li>1. If the modem is attached to your computer, make sure it is turned on.</li> <li>2. Quit any programs that may be using the modem.</li> <li>Click Next when you are ready to continue.</li> <li>Image: Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list.</li> </ul>
	< Back Next > Cancel

3. Check the box next to "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list" and then click "Next". You will see lists for various modems. Select the type of modem you have on the machine.

Install New Modem	
Click the manufacture or if you have an in	arer and model of your modem. If your modem is not listed, stallation disk, click Have Disk.
Manufacturers: Standard Modem Types) Acer Angia Apex Data Inc. AST AT 8.T ▲	Models          Standard 300 bps Modem         Standard 1200 bps Modem         Standard 2400 bps Modem         Standard 9600 bps Modem         Standard 14400 bps Modem         Standard 19200 bps Modem         Standard 19200 bps Modem         Standard 28800 bps Modem         Have Disk
	< <u>B</u> ack Next > Cancel

4. Click on the button "Have Disk" and you are prompted for the location of the modem setup file. You must know where the file, "KMNLMDM.INF", is located.

nstall Fr	om Disk	×
_	Insert the manufacturer's installation disk into the drive selected, and then click OK.	OK Cancel
	Copy manufacturer's files from:	<u>B</u> rowse

5. You may either enter the exact location of the file in the list box named "Copy manufacturer's files from:" or you can select "Browse" to navigate the directories to your file.

Open		? ×
File <u>n</u> ame: kmnlmdm.inf kmnlmdm.inf	Eolders: C:\Program Files\KMT\API	OK Cancel N <u>e</u> twork
	Drives:	

- 6. Locate the setup file named "KMNLMDM.INF" and click "OK".
- 7. Select MC/SC-Host Slip Connection and click Next.

Install N	ew Modem			
	Click the manufacturer and r or if you have an installation	model of your mo disk, click Have	odem. If your moo Disk.	dem is not listed, and
Mode <u>i</u> s Kolimor	gen SSSC or SSMC connecti	on		
				<u>H</u> ave Disk
		< <u>B</u> ack	Next>	Cancel

8. Install on the COM port to which you are connected and click Next.

Make New Connection	×
	<u>Iype a name for the computer you are dialing:</u>
	Select a device:
	<u>C</u> onfigure
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

9. Click OK and close out of Modems.

Now, a dialup networking connection must be set up to connect to the modem.

#### DIALUP NETWORKING

1. Select the Windows Start Menu > Programs > Accessories > Dialup Networking. If dialup networking is not listed there, then it is probably not installed on you system. You will need to add dialup networking from the Control Panel > Add Programs > Windows Setup. Please refer to you windows documentation if you need more information on this procedure.

B	Dial	-Up N	etworki	ing				
	<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	<u>G</u> o	F <u>a</u> vorites	<u>C</u> onnections	<u>H</u> elp	
	Make Conne	New ction						
1	object	t(s)						/ii

2. Double-click on Make New Connection.

Welcome to Dial-Up Networking			
	Dial-Up Networking enables you to connect one computer to another computer and to the network by using a modem.		
	< Back Next > Cancel		

3. Click "Next". You will now need to enter a phone number (including area code) for this connection.

Make New Connection	
	Type the phone number for the computer you want to call: Area code:elephone number: 555 5555555 Country code: United States of America (1)
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel



*Windows95 requires you to enter a phone number but this is not actually used.* 

You may need to enter your area code if this is the first time configuring dialup networking. You will want to use you actual area code in case you configure any other modems in the future.

4. Click "Next>". You will be prompted to enter a name for this connection. You may enter any name you like for the name of this connection. If you do enter a different name, then the following instructions that refer to "My Connection" will now refer to your name instead.

Make New Connection	
	You have successfully created a new Dial-Up Networking connection called: My Connection Click Finish to save it in your Dial-Up Networking folder. Double-click it to connect. To edit this connection later, click it, click the File menu and then click Properties.
	< <u>B</u> ack Finish Cancel

- 5. Click "Finish." This completes the setup of the connection, but it still has to be configured.
- 6. Right-click on the Dial-Up Networking connection you just made. When the submenu pops up, you will select "Properties".

这 Dial-Up Networkin	g _ 🗆 🗙		
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>C</u> onr	nections <u>H</u> elp		
Make New My Conn			
Connection	C <u>o</u> nnect		
	Create <u>S</u> hortcut <u>D</u> elete		
	Properties		
Opens the property sheet of selected items.			

7. You will see the General Properties for this connection.

My Connection ? 🗙
General Server Types Scripting Multilink
My Connection
Phone number:
Area code: Telephone number:
555 💌 - 5555555
Country code:
United States of America (1)
✓ Use area code and Dialing Properties
Co <u>n</u> nect using:
Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection
<u>C</u> onfigure
OK Cancel

- 8. Select the Configure tab.
- 9. Select the COM port and set Maximum speed of 38400.

Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection Properties	? ×
General Connection	
Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection	_
Port: Communications Port (COM1)	
<u>Speaker volume</u>	
Low High	
Maximum speed	
38400	
Only connect at this speed	
OK Ca	ncel

In the connection	ons tab, the settings should be.
Data bits:	8
Parity:	None
Stop bits:	1
1	
	Kollmorgen SSSU or SSMU connection Properties
	General Connection Options
	Connection preferences
	Data bits: 8
	Parity: None
	Stop bits: 1
	Call preferences
	☐ <u>W</u> ait for dial tone before dialing
	Cancel the call if not connected within secs
	Disconnect a call if idle for more than mins
	Port Settings
	OK Cancel

10. In the connections tab, the settings should be:

- 11. Click on the Advanced button.
- 12. UNCHECK "Use Flow Control".

Advanced Connection Settings	? ×
Use gror control	Use flow control <u>H</u> ardware (RTS/CTS) <u>S</u> oftware (XON/XOFF)
Modulation type	
Extra settings	
	OK Cancel

- 13. Click OK.
- 14. Select the Server Types tab.

My Connection 🛛 📪 🗙
General Server Types Scripting Multilink
Tura - (Diallia Carran
Type or Diar-Op Server.
SLIP: Unix Connection
Advanced options:
Log on to network
Enable software compression
Require encrypted password
Require data encryption
$\square$ <u>B</u> ecord a log file for this connection
Allowed network protocols:
<u> </u>
[FX/SFX Compatible
<u>I</u> CP/IP Settings
(OK) Cancel

- 15. Make sure "SLIP: Unix Connection" is displayed.
- 16. Make sure "Log on to network" and "Record a log file for this connection" are unchecked.
- 17. Make sure TCP/IP is checked.
- 18. Click "TCP/IP Settings..."

TCP/IP Settings		? ×
Server assigned IP © Specify an IP addr	address ess	
IP <u>a</u> ddress:	91.0.0.1	
Server assigned na Specify name served	ame server addresses er addresses	
Primary <u>D</u> NS:	0.0.0.0	
Secondary D <u>N</u> S:	0.0.0.0	
Primary <u>W</u> INS:	0.0.0.0	
Secondary WINS:	0.0.0.0	
Use IP header <u>c</u> on	npression ay on remote network	el

19. Mark "Specify an IP address" and enter "91.0.0.1".

- 20. Mark "Server assigned name server addresses".
- 21. Uncheck "Use IP header compression".
- 22. Uncheck "Use default gateway on remote network."
- 23. Click OK to return to the previous screen.
- 24. You are finished creating the new dialup connection. Click OK.

Make sure you are connected to your controller using a NULL modem cable. You are ready to begin communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC.

# WINDOWS98

- 1. Make sure you are running Windows95 Version 4.10 or higher.
- 2. Connect null modem cable to SC.

#### ADD MODEM

1. Open the Control Panel from the Windows Start Menu > Settings > Control Panel.



2. Double Click on the icon "Modems".

Modems Properties
General Diagnostics
The following modems are set up on this computer:
Add Remove Properties
Dialing preferences Dialing from: New Location
Click Dialing Properties to modify how your calls are dialed.
Dialing Properties
OK Cancel

3. Click on the button "Add".

Install New Modem	
	<ul> <li>Windows will now try to detect your modem. Before continuing, you should:</li> <li>1. If the modem is attached to your computer, make sure it is turned on.</li> <li>2. Quit any programs that may be using the modem.</li> <li>Click Next when you are ready to continue.</li> <li>Image: Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list.</li> </ul>
	< <u>B</u> ack Next > Cancel

- 4. Make sure your modem is turned on.
- 5. Quit any programs that might be using the modem.
- 6. Check the box next to "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list" and then click "Next".



- 7. In the "Manufacturers:" box, select Standard Modem Types.
- 8. In the "Models" box, select the Dial-Up Networking between 2 PCs.
- 9. Click on the button "Have Disk" and you will be prompted for the location of the modem setup file.

Install Fr	om Disk	×
4	Insert the manufacturer's installation disk into the drive selected, and then click OK.	OK Cancel
	Copy manufacturer's files from:	<u>B</u> rowse

10. Select "Browse" to locate the file.

Open		? ×
File <u>n</u> ame: kmnlmdm.inf	Eolders: C:\Program Files\KMT\API	OK Cancel N <u>e</u> twork
	Dri <u>v</u> es:	

- 11. Now locate the setup file named "KMNLMDM.INF". This should be found at C:\Program Files\KMTG Motion Suite\API.
- 12. Click "OK" to install the drivers for the dial-up connection.

Install N	lew Modem
٩	Click the manufacturer and model of your modem. If your modem is not listed, and or if you have an installation disk, click Have Disk.
Modeļs Kolimo	rgen SSSC or SSMC connection
	<u>H</u> ave Disk
	< <u>B</u> ack Next > Cancel

- 13. Make sure "MC/SC-Host SLIP connection" is selected.
- 14. Click "Next".

Make New Connection		×
	Type a name for the computer you are dialing: My Connection Select a device: Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection	] ] ;;
	<u>C</u> onfigure < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	_

- 15. Select the COM port on which you would like to install the modem. Please select the COM port you will be using (most likely COM1).
- 16. Click "Next".



17. You are finished setting up the modem. Select "Finish". The modem is now displayed.

Modems Properties
General Diagnostics
The following modems are set up on this computer:
SSC or SSMC connection
Add Remove Properties
Dialing preferences Dialing from: New Location
Click Dialing Properties to modify how your calls are dialed.
Dialing Properties
OK Cancel

18. Select "Close".

Now a Dial-Up Networking connection needs to be setup to connect to the modem.

#### DIALUP NETWORKING

1. Select the Windows Start Menu > Programs > Accessories > Communications > Dialup Networking.



If Dial-Up Networking is not listed, it is probably not installed on you system. You will need to add Dial-Up Networking from the Control Panel > Add Programs > Windows Setup. Please refer to you windows documentation if you need more information on this procedure.

B	Dial	Up No	etworki	ng					_	
]	<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	<u>G</u> o	F <u>a</u> vorites	<u>C</u> onnection	ns <u>H</u> elp			1
	<b>↓</b> Bac	i ⊸ k	<b>→</b> Forwar	rd	t_ Up	_ Create	<b>Ø</b> Dial	y Cut	L Copy	»
],	A <u>d</u> dres	s 😰	Dial-Up	Netwo	rking					•
	Make I Conne	New ction								
1	object(	s) selec	ted .							

2. Double click on "Make New Connection". The wizard is displayed to assist you in configuring a dialup connection.

Make New Connection	×
	Image:
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

- 3. You may enter any name you like for the name of this connection. If you do enter a different name, the following instructions that refer to "My Connection" will now refer to the name you provide for this connection instead. Make sure "MC/SC-Host SLIP Connection" is displayed in the list box titled "Select a device:".
- 4. Click "Next".

Make New Connection	×
	Type the phone number for the computer you want to call: Area code:elephone number: 555 5555555 Country or region code: United States of America (1)
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> > Cancel

5. Windows 98 requires you to enter a phone number but this is not actually used. Please enter any number.



If this is the first time configuring Dial-Up Networking, you will want to use your actual area code in case you configure additional modems in the future.

6. Click "Next".

Make New Connection	×
	You have successfully created a new Dial-Up Networking connection called: My Connection Click Finish to save it in your Dial-Up Networking folder. Double-click it to connect. To edit this connection later, click it, click the File menu and then click Properties.
	< <u>B</u> ack Finish Cancel

7. You are finished creating the new dial-up connection. Select "Finish". Now, you need to manually configure the settings specific to this modem.

8. If Dial-Up Networking is not still open, you will need to open it.



9. From the Dial-Up Networking window, right click on the icon "My Connection" and select "Properties".

😰 Dial-Up N	etworking					_	
<u> </u>	<u>V</u> iew <u>G</u> o	F <u>a</u> vorites	<u>C</u> onnectio	ons <u>H</u> elp			
Back -	⇒ . Forward	t Up	_ Create	Ø Dial	X Cut	Сору	»
Address 😰	Dial-Up Netwo	rking					•
Make New Connection	My Connec	tion Cre De Re Pro	<b>nnect</b> eate <u>S</u> hortcu lete na <u>m</u> e p <b>perties</b>	t			
🛄 Opens the	property sheet (	of selected i	tems.				

10. The configuration dialog is displayed.

My Connection 📪 🔀
General Server Types Scripting Multilink
My Connection
Phone number:
Area code: Telephone number:
Country code:
✓ Use area code and Dialing Properties
Connect using:
Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection
<u>C</u> onfigure
OK Cancel

- 11. You will not need to configure anything on the "General", "Scripting" or "Multilink" tabs.
- 12. Select the Configure tab.
- 13. Select the COM port and set Maximum speed of 38400.

Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection Properties	? ×
General Connection	
Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection	
Port: Communications Port (COM1)	
<u>Speaker volume</u>	
Low High	
- <u>M</u> aximum speed	
38400	
Only connect at this speed	
OK Ca	ncel

14. In the connections tab, the settings should be:

Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection Properties
General Connection
Connection preferences
Data bits:
Parity: None
Stop bits: 1
Call preferences
Wait for dial tone before dialing
Cancel the call if not connected within secs
Disconnect a call if idle for more than     mins
Port Settings Advanced
OK Cancel

- 15. Click on the Advanced button.
- 16. **UNCHECK**"Use Flow Control".

Advanced Connection Settings	?
Use error control  Equired to connect  Compress data Euse cellular protocol	Use flow control     Use flow control     D     Hardware (RTS/CTS)     Software (XON/XOFF)
_ <u>M</u> odulation type	
	<b>V</b>
Extra settings	
☐ Rec <u>o</u> rd a log file	
	OK Cancel

17. Select the "Server Types" tab and proceed to the next step.

My Connection ? 🗙
General Server Types Scripting Multilink
Type of Dial-Up <u>S</u> erver:
SLIP: Unix Connection
Advanced options:
Log on to network
Enable software compression
Require encrypted password
E Require data encryption
☐ <u>R</u> ecord a log file for this connection
Allowed network protocols:
<u> ∏ N</u> et8EUI
IFX/6FX Compatible
Cancel

- 18. Make sure SLIP: Unix Connection is selected for "Type of Dial-Up Server."
- 19. Make sure only "TCP/IP" is checked.
- 20. Select the "TCP/IP Settings" button.

TCP/IP Settings								?	×
© <u>S</u> erver assigned IP © Specify an I <u>P</u> addre	addre ess	388							
IP <u>a</u> ddress:	91	•	0	•	0	•	1		
<ul> <li>Server assigned name server addresses</li> <li>Specify name server addresses</li> </ul>									
Primary <u>D</u> NS:	0		0		0	•	0		
Secondary D <u>N</u> S:	0		0		0		0		
Primary <u>W</u> INS:	0		0		0		0		
Secondary W[NS:	0		0		0		0		
Use IP header <u>c</u> ompression Use default gateway on remote network OK Cancel									

- 21. Select "Specify an IP address" and enter "91.0.0.1".
- 22. Make sure "Server assigned name server addresses" is selected.
- 23. Uncheck "Use IP header compression".
- 24. Uncheck "Use default gateway on remote network".
- 25. Click "OK" to return to the previous options page.
- 26. Click "OK" again.
- 27. You are finished configuring the dial-up connection.

Make sure you are connected to your controller using a NULL modem cable. You are ready to begin communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC.

#### WINDOWS 2000

- 1. Make sure you are running Windows2000 Version 5.00.2195 or higher.
- 2. Connect null modem cable to the SERVOSTAR SC COM1 port, connector C7. Kollmorgen provides a null modem cable in the connector kit for the SERVOSTAR SC.

#### ADD MODEM

- 1. Open the Control Panel (Start>Settings>Control Panel).
- 2. Double Click on the icon "Phone and Modem Options".



3. Click the "Modems" tab.

Phone And N	Modern Options			? ×
Dialing Rule	es Modem: Ac	lvanced		
	The followirg mo	dems are install	ed:	
Modem	Attached To			
1			0	Dunanting
		A00	Hemove .	Froperties
		OK	Cancel	Apply

- 4. Click "Add". The new modem wizard is displayed to help you configure the modem.
- 5. Quit any programs that might be using the modem.
- 6. Check the box next to "Don't detect my modem; I will select it from a list".



- 7. Click "Next".
- 8. Click on the button "Have Disk".



9. You will be prompted for the location of the modem setup file.

P	Inser: the manufacturer's installation disk into the drive selected, and then click OK.	OK
		Cancel
	Copy manufacturer's files frcm:	
		Browse

- 10. Select "Browse".
- 11. Locate the setup file named "KMNLMDM.INF". This should be found at C:\Program Files\KMTG Motion Suite\API.
- 12. Click "OK" to install the drivers for the dial-up connection.

Inser: the manufacturer's installation disk into the crive selected, and then click OK	ЭК
 gr selected, and then click UK.	Cancel
	Cance
L'opu manutacturer's tiles from:	
Copy manufacturer's hies from:	

13. Make sure "Kollmorgen SSSC or SSMC connection" is selected.

Add/Remove Hardware Wizard	
Install New Modem	
Select the manufacturer and model have an installation disk, click Have	a' your modern. If your modern is not listed, or if you e Disk.
Models: Kollmoigen SSSC or SSMC connection	
	Have D sk
	< Back Next> Cancel

#### 14. Click "Next".

15. Select the COM1 port.

Add/Remove Hardware Wi	zard			
Install New Modem Select the port(s) you w	vant to install the modem	on.		
	You have selected the Kollmorgen SSSC or SS On which ports do you All ports Selected ports	following mo SMC connec want to insta	dem: tion II it?	
		< Back	Next>	Cancel

- 16. Click "Next".
- 17. Click "Yes" and continue the installation.

18. You are finished setting up the modem. Select "Finish". The modem is now displayed in the dialog box.



19. Select "OK".

A Dial-Up Networking connection needs to be setup to connect to the modem.

#### **NETWORK ADAPTER AND PROTOCOL INSTALLATION**

Microsoft Dial-Up Adapter and Microsoft TCP/IP protocol must be installed. If they are not installed:

- 1. Open the Control Panel (Start>Settings>Control Panel).
- 2. Open "Network and Dial-up Connections". Microsoft Dial-Up Adapter and Microsoft TCP/IP protocol must be installed. If not, they must be added.
- 3. Click "Add Network Components".

📴 Network and Dial-up Connection	15		1 100 10		
File Edit view Favorites To	ols Advanced	l Help			1
📙 🖙 Back 🔹 🔿 👻 🔂 🛛 🔞 Search	Palders	()Hstory	n in X 🖉	) ==-	
Address 🔁 Network and Dial-up Con	nectiors			•	∂G0
Network and Dial- up Connections	Make New Cornection	Local Area Connection	L 🔊 testing123	L & Microsoft Jntern	
This folder contains network connections for this computer, and a wizard to help you create a new connection.					
To create a new connection, dick Make New Connection.					
To open a connection, click its icon.					
To access settings and components of a connection, right-click its con and then click Properties.					
To identify your computer on the network, click <u>Network</u> <u>Identification</u> .					
To add additional networking comporents, cick <u>Add Network</u> <u>Components</u> .					
🛃 4 object(s)					1

4. Check the "Networking services" box.

ndows Components			
You can add or iemove comp	onents of Windows 2	2000.	
To add or remove a compone part of the component will be Details.	nt. click the checkbo installed. To see who	ox. A shaded box means that at's included in a component,	only click
Components:			- 23 - 3
🔲 🚉 Management and Mo	nitoring Tools	0.9 M	D
🗹 🛃 Networking Services		0.1 M	B
Cther Network File an	d Print Services	0.0 M	В
Description: Contains a varie	ty of specialized, net	work-related services and prot	vero ocols.
Total disk space required:	COMB		
Space available on disk	2567.9 MB	Detail	s

#### 5. Click "Details".

ervices			
nove a compon nert will be inst	ent, click the check b alled. To see what's in	ox. A shaded box me cluded in a compone	ans that only pait ent. click Details.
nts of Networki	ng Services		
listener			0.C MD 🖂
e TCP/IP Servi	ces		0.C MB
			-
Supports the f Discard, Echo	ollowing TCP/IP servi ), and Quote of the Da	ces: Character Gene <sub>19</sub> ,	rator, Daytime,
ace required:	0.0 MB		Details
ble on disk:	2567.9 MB		P.6.010
	iervices hove a compon- nert will be inst- nts of Networkii istener e TCP/IP Servi e TCP/IP Servi ble on disk:	ervices hove a component, click the check be hert will be installed. To see what's in hts of Networking Services istener e TCP/IP Services Supports the following TCP/IP servi Discard, Echo, and Quote of the Dia ace required: 0.0 MB ble on disk: 2567.9 MB	An envices hows a component, click the check box. A shaded box me hert will be installed. To see what's included in a component ints of Networking Services: histener e TCP/IP Services Supports the following TCP/IP services: Character Gene Discard, Echo, and Quote of the Day. ace required: 0.0 MB ble on disk: 2567.9 MB

- 6. Check both boxes.
- 7. Click "OK".
- 8. Click "Next>".
- 9. You may be asked to insert the Windows2000 disk. Be sure you have these on hand or be sure you have a system administrator with you who will have these.
- 10. After installation is complete, restart the computer.

# NETWORK AND DIAL-UP CONNECTIONS CREATION AND CONFIGURATION

1. Select "Network and Dial-up connections" (Start>Programs>Accessories>Communications> Network and Dial-up connections).



If "Network and Dial-up connections" is not listed, it is probably not installed on you system. You will need to add "Network and Dial-up connections" from the Control Panel. Refer to your Windows documentation if you need more information on this procedure.

2. Double click on "Make New Connection" and click "Next>".



4. Fill in 111 as the Phone number and click "Next>".

5.

ork	
hor	he Number to Dial You must specify the phone number of the computer or network you want to connect to.
1 y c	ype the phone number of the computer or network you are connecting to. If you want our computer to determine automatically how to dial from different locations, check Lise lialing rules.
	Area code: Phone number:
	County/region code:
	I Le dialing rules
	< Back Next> Canc
iec	k "For all users" and then click "Next>".
iec ork	k "For all users" and then click "Next>".
ork	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard mection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users. or just yourself.
ork	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard rection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this conrection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or.
	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard rection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this connection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Create this connection:
iec ork oni	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard nection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this connection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Ceate this connection: For all users
iec ork oni	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard mection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this conrection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Create this connection: For all users Only for myself
iec ork oni	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard rection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this conrection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Ceate this connection: For all users Only for myself
	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard rection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this conrection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Ceate this connection: For all users Only for myself
	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard mection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this conrection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Ceate this connection: For all users Only for myself
	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard mection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this conrection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Ceate this connection: For all users Only for myself
	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard Action Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this conrection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Ceate this connection: For all users Only for myself
	k "For all users" and then click "Next>". Connection Wizard mection Availability You may make the new connection available to all users, or just yourself. You may make this conrection available to all users, or keep it only for your own use. A connection stored in your profile will not be available unless you are logged or. Create this connection: • For all users • Tor all users • Only for myself Canc

6. Choose a name for you're connection and click "Finish".

Network Connection Wizard	×
<b>Finished</b> The wizard is ready to create your connection.	<b>2</b>
Type a name you want for this connection:	
testin123	
Click Finish to save it in the Network Connections folder.	
To edit this connection later, select it, click the File menu, and then click Properties.	
< Back	Finish Cancel

- 7. Click "Properties".
- 8. Under the "Networking" tab enter "SLIP:Unix Connection" and check all the boxes under it (if "Internet Protocol(TCP/IP)" or "Client for Microsoft Networks" do not exist, install them from the Windows 2000 installation disk.)

estin123		? ×
General Options Secu	rity Networking S	inaring
Type of dial-up server La	m caling:	
SLIP: Unix Connection		
		Settings
Components checked a	re used by this conne	ection:
🗹 🏹 Internet Protocol	(TCP/IP)	
🛛 🖳 Novell Distribute	d Print Services	
🛛 🗹 📃 Client for Microso	oft Networks	
🛛 🖳 Novell Client for '	Windows 2000	
1		
Install	Uninstal	Properties
- Description		
Transmission Control F	Protocol/Internet Pro	locol. The default
wide area network pro	tocol that provides o	communication
across diverse interco	nnected networks.	
		Lancer

- 9. Click "Properties".
- 10. Fill-in the IP address "91.0.0.1" and then click "OK".

ternet Protocol (TCP/IP) Prope	rties	?
General		
You can get IP settings assigned at supports this capability. Otherwise, administrator for the appropriate IP :	utomaticaly if your network you need to ask your network settings.	
C Obtain an IP address automat	lically	
┌● Use the following IP address:	<del></del>	
IP address:	91.0.0.1	
Prelerred DNS server: Alternate DNS server:		
1	Advance	d
	ОК С	ancel

11. Click "OK" twice.



If this is the first time configuring Dial-Up Networking, you will want to use your actual area code in case you configure additional modems in the future.

You are finished creating and configuring the new dial-up connection. Now, you need to click the "Dial" button to connect to the controller.

# **Communication Start Up**

Now that you have installed **MOTIONLINK** and BASIC Moves Development Studio or Motion Suite, and have configured the appropriate communication (either Ethernet (C6 connector) or serial (C7 connector)), it is time to see if all this works! Choose the appropriate communication steps below to verify that you can communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC.

## **BASIC** Moves Development Studio and Ethernet

Be sure you are connected to the Ethernet port (C6 on the SERVOSTAR SC). Open BASIC Moves Development Studio you installed on your PC.

Select Communication Method.	🗙
Communicate using:	
C ISA / PCI Bus	SA / PCI Card 1 🔽
C Serial Port	
Ethernet	E <u>d</u> it
Make this the default com	nunication method

- 1. Select "Ethernet"
- 2. Click OK. A list of available devices is displayed.

elect Device			Z
Name SC 16_Axis MC_CLASS	Serial Number S00E-0029 S98M-1111 S98M-9999	DIP 12321 11 11	IP Address 100.0.0.2 100.0.0.3 100.0.0.4
	)K Re	fresh Ca	ncel

- 3. Select the appropriate device.
- 4. Click OK.



5. If you click "Yes" at this prompt, you are walked through the steps of creating a new project. If you select "No" will see a blank project screen.

#BASIC Moves Development Studio -NO PROJECT OPEN	
	🗿 🗄 😚 🗠 🔜 🗑 😡
Program Name	BASIC Moves File Manager
×>	
Variable Value	X Message Log Find in Files 1 Find in Files 1

6. You are finished. You should be communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC.

Once you have "dialed up" the SERVOSTAR SC, the communication connection stays alive (although you can turn it off if you wish) until you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC. You can also use the dialog window to "Hang up" the connection or you can click on the Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC.

While the connection is active, you can repeatedly enter and leave BASIC Moves Development Studios without disturbing the connection. If you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC, you disconnect the communication. To communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, you must reconnect using the steps outlined above.

If you have problems, verify that you have correctly followed all the steps and wired the controller properly. If you are still experiencing problems, contact your local sales representative. If you do not know who your local sales representative is, contact Kollmorgen at 1-800-777-3786.

## **BASIC Moves Development Studio and Serial** Communication

Be sure you are connected to the serial port (C7 on the SERVOSTAR SC).



Be sure you have NOT connected to C1.

1. Select Start, Programs, Accessories, Dial-Up Networking.

🕹 Dial-Up Networking	? ×
	Phonebook entry to dial:          SSSC/SSMC connection         New
	Phone number pre <u>v</u> iew: Dialing fr <u>o</u> m: New Location
	<u>Dial</u>

- 2. Select the connection you created ("SSSC/SSMC connection" in our example).
- 3. A terminal window appears. This window may appear different for different operating systems. The one shown below in for Windows95.

😫 Terminal Screen	_ 🗆 ×
	Å
4	▼ ►
Allow keyboard input	
F Start minimized	
Continue <u>C</u> ancel	

- 4. Click "Continue."
- 5. You should see a Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC to show you have an active connection.
- 6. Open BASIC Moves Development Studio. You must choose the type of communication to use.

Select Communication Method	×
Communicate using:	
C ISA / PCI Bus ISA /	/ PCI Card 1 💌
Serial Port	
C <u>E</u> thernet	E <u>d</u> it
Make this the default community of the def	cation method <u>H</u> elp

- 7. Select "Serial Port."
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. You must decide if you wish to begin a new project .

BASIC N	loves Development Studio 🛛 🛛 🕅
⚠	Would you like to create a new project? (recommended)
	<u>Yes</u> <u>N</u> o

10. If you click "Yes" at this prompt, you are walked through the steps of creating a new project. If you select "No" at this prompt, you are taken to thea blank project screen.

₩ BASIC Moves Development Studio -NO PROJECT OPEN	
File Edit View Debug Tools Links Window Help	
▋D <b>₽₽</b> ▓₿ <b>₿</b> ₽₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩₩	2 € 60' ℃ ☎ 3 5 0
Program Name	BASIC Moves File Manager
Variable Value	X Message Log / Find in Files
Display/Hide BASIC Moves File Manager	SC SC

11. You are finished. You should be communicating with the SERVOSTAR SC.

Once you have "dialed up" the SERVOSTAR SC, the communication connection stays alive (although you can turn it off if you wish) until you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC. You can also use the dialog window to "Hang up" the connection or you can click on the Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC.

While the connection is active, you can repeatedly enter and leave BASIC Moves Development Studios without disturbing the connection. If you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC, you disconnect the communication. To communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, you must reconnect using the steps outlined above.

If you have problems, verify that you have correctly followed all the steps and wired the controller properly. If you are still experiencing problems, contact your local sales representative. If you do not know who your local sales representative is, contact Kollmorgen at 1-800-777-3786.

1.

a

## MOTIONLINK and Ethernet

Be sure you are connected to the Ethernet port (C6 on the SERVOSTAR SC). Open **MOTIONLINK** you installed on your PC.

	🚰 Controllers detection	×	3
	Do you want MotionLINK to de SSSC controllers connected serial ports ?	etect SSMC and to the network or	
	Don't ask me again	Yes <u>N</u> o	
Select "Yes." You w	vill see the MOTIONLINK Sta	art screen.	
😻 Start MOTIONLINK			
NOTICE - IN ORDER FOR 1.) ALL SERCOS DRIVES 2.) IF SERIAL DRIVES AN	MOTIONLINK TO OPERATE PRO MUST BE CONNECTED TO THE RE CONNECTED, THEY MUST BE	PERLY: RING AND SET TO TI SET TO THE SAME E	HE SAME BAUD RATE. BAUD RATE.
MOTIONLINK operates by loa MOTIONLINK remembers the table, you'll have to define a r o To set up a new device ta o To load a new device table o To start the Program, click o If you're a new user or are o If you need to run Basic M o For more detailed help, clic	ading a device table (a file that describes last device table you used and will try to new one, or load an existing one. ble or scan for controllers and drives, clic e from disk, click 'Load Device Table'. the 'Start' button. unsure what to do, click 'Start.' oves to set drive addresses or other para sk 'Com Setup' and then press F1.	the controllers and drives ir load it. If MOTIONLINK ca k 'Com Setup'. meters, click 'Basic Moves.	n your system) from disk. an't find or load the last device .'
Current Device Table File Name Controll Sercos Driv Serial Driv	Off-lin Dis ves 0 ves 0 ves 0 Moves	e Mode Demo abled Disa Load Device Table	abled Com Setup
KOLLMORGEN		X Exit	Start

2. Click "Com Setup."

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Communications Setup:	DEVICESX.TBL
<u>F</u> ile <u>D</u> evices <u>S</u> can <u>H</u> elp	
Device Explorer	- MOTIONLINK Communications Status
	Interactive C Offline C Demo
	DPRAM BS-232 Ethernet
	Scan for Controllers Connect Controller Axis Names Valid Axis Names for Selected Controller
Device Info	
Comm Tupe: SLIP	
Drive Address:	
Comm. Port: Not Applicable	
Baud Rate: Not Applicable	
Device Counts	
Controllers: 0	
Sercos Axes: 0	Cancel OK
Serial Axes: 0	

- 3. In the **MOTIONLINK** Communications Status section of this screen, you will select "Interactive" and "Ethernet".
- 4. Click "Scan for Controllers." A screen is displayed with the available devices.

🖉 SERVOSTA	AR MOTIONLINK Communications Setup	DEVICESX.TBL		
<u>File D</u> evice	es <u>S</u> can <u>H</u> elp			
Device Explorer		- MOTIONLINK Com	nunications Status	
SERVO	DSTAR SC 1 SN:S00E-0029	Interactive	C Offline	C Demo
ap SERVC	DSTAR SC / 2 SN:S98M-1111 DSTAR SC / 3 SN:S98M-9999	<u>D</u> PRAM	<u>B</u> S-232	Ethernet
		Scan for Controlle	rs Connect Controller	
		Valid Axis Names	for Selected Controller	
Device Info: SEF	RVUSTAR SC TISN:SUUE-UU29			
Comm. Type:	Ethernet	•		
IP Address:	100.0.0.2	•		
Controller Name:	Carroll SC			
Baud Rate:	Not Applicable			
Device Counts				
Controllers:	3			
Sercos Axes:	0		Cancel	ок
Serial Axes:	0			

- 5. Highlight the appropriate one.
- 6. Click "Connect Controller."
- 7. You will see a screen letting you know when you have successfully connected to the SERVOSTAR SC.



8. You will return to the previous screen showing the active connection.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Communications Setup:	DEVICESX.TBL	
Elle Devices Scan Help Device Explorer	-MOTIONLINK Communications Status-	C Demo
SERVOSTAR SC 2 SN:S98M-1111	DPRAM         BS-232	Ethernet
	Scan Scan for Controllers Axis Names Valid Axis Names for Selected Controller	
Device Info: SERVOSTAR SC 1 SN:S00E-0029		
Comm Tupe: Ethernet		
IP Address: 100.0.02		
Controller Name: Carroll SC		
Baud Rate: Not Applicable		
Device Counts		
Controllers: 3		1
Sercos Axes: 1	Cancel	ок
Serial Axes: 0		

- 9. Highlight the active connection.
- 10. Click OK. You will be at the main **MOTIONLINK** screen.
- 11. From here, begin by clicking "Start." Follow the information outlined in the **MOTIONLINK** Startup Wizard.



# In the MOTIONLINK terminal window, you cannot use the mouse to place the cursor and then change text.

Once you have "dialed up" the SERVOSTAR SC, the communication connection stays alive (although you can turn it off if you wish) until you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC. You can also use the dialog window to "Hang up" the connection or you can click on the Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC.

While the connection is active, you can repeatedly enter and leave **MOTIONLINK** without disturbing the connection. If you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC, you disconnect the communication. To communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, you must reconnect using the steps outlined above.

If you have problems, verify that you have correctly followed all the steps and wired the controller properly. If you are still experiencing problems, contact your local sales representative. If you do not know who your local sales representative is, contact Kollmorgen at 1-800-777-3786.

## **MOTIONLINK and Serial Communication**

Be sure you are connected to the serial port (C7 on the SERVOSTAR SC).

Be sure vou	have NOT	connected to	<i>C1</i> .

1. Open **MOTIONLINK** you installed on your PC.

🖉 Controllers detection		×
Do you want MotionLIN SSSC controllers conne serial ports ?	K to detect SS acted to the ne	MC and twork or
🔽 Don't ask me again	Yes	<u>N</u> o

2. Select "Yes." You will see the **MOTIONLINK** Start screen.

💐 Start MOTIONLINK
NOTICE - IN ORDER FOR MOTIONLINK TO OPERATE PROPERLY: 1.) ALL SERCOS DRIVES MUST BE CONNECTED TO THE RING AND SET TO THE SAME BAUD RATE. 2.) IF SERIAL DRIVES ARE CONNECTED, THEY MUST BE SET TO THE SAME BAUD RATE.
MOTIONLINK operates by loading a device table (a file that describes the controllers and drives in your system) from disk. MOTIONLINK remembers the last device table you used and will try to load it. If MOTIONLINK can't find or load the last device table, you'll have to define a new one, or load an existing one. o To set up a new device table or scan for controllers and drives, click 'Com Setup'. o To load a new device table from disk, click 'Load Device Table'. o To start the Program, click the 'Start' button. o If you're a new user or are unsure what to do, click 'Start.'
o If you need to run Basic Moves to set drive addresses or other parameters, click 'Basic Moves.' o For more detailed help, click 'Com Setup' and then press F1.
Current Device Table     Off-line Mode     Demo Mode       File     None     Disabled       Name     Controllers     0
Serial Drives 0 Serial Drives 0 Basic Moves Basic Moves Com Table
KOLLMORGEN Kort Start

3. Click "Com Setup." You will see the Communications Setup screen.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Communications Setup: File Devices Scan Help	DEVICESX.TBL	
Device Explorer	MOTIONLINK Communications Interactive C DPRAM	Status Offline C Demo
Device Info	COM1 © 9600 baud © 19200 baud Scan © Not used COM3 © 9600 baud © 19200 baud Scan © Not used	COM2 C 9600 baud C 19200 baud Scan C Not used COM4 C 9600 baud C 19200 baud Scan C Not used
Device Type:       Onknown         Comm. Type:       SLIP         Drive Address:       Comm. Port:         Not Applicable       Baud Rate:         Device Counts       Controllers:         0       0	Serial Controller	Connect Controller
Sercos Axes: 0 Serial Axes: 0		Cancel OK

- 4. In the **MOTIONLINK** Communications Status section of this screen, you will select "Interactive" and "RS-232".
- 5. Click "RAS Dialer." A screen is displayed with the available devices.

KMTG TOLL FREE	New	Listed to the left are all the entries in the current phone book. Select one of
SC Connection 555555555	Edit	the phone book entries.
	Delete	
	Connect	
	Disconnect	
Phone Book	Refresh	If you want to use another phone book, enter the filename and path here. Ther press the Refresh button. Note: this ha no effect in Windows 95.
Connect State		

- 6. Highlight the connection you created.
- 7. Highlight the appropriate connection and click "Connect Controller."
- 8. You will see a screen letting you know when you have successfully connected to the SERVOSTAR SC.



- 9. Click OK. You will now be at the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.
- 10. From here, begin by clicking "Start." Follow the information outlined in the **MOTIONLINK** Startup Wizard.



# In the MOTIONLINK terminal window, you cannot use the mouse to place the cursor and then change text.

Once you have "dialed up" the SERVOSTAR SC, the communication connection stays alive (although you can turn it off if you wish) until you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC. You can also use the dialog window to "Hang up" the connection or you can click on the Dial-up Networking icon on the status bar of your PC.

While the connection is active, you can repeatedly enter and leave BASIC Moves Development Studios without disturbing the connection. If you power off either the PC or the SERVOSTAR SC, you disconnect the communication. To communicate with the SERVOSTAR SC, you must reconnect using the steps outlined above.

If you have problems, verify that you have correctly followed all the steps and wired the controller properly. If you are still experiencing problems, contact your local sales representative. If you do not know who your local sales representative is, contact Kollmorgen at 1-800-777-3786.

## Helpful Information About MotionSuite

At the main MotionSuite screen, you will see several options on the left-hand side. This section describes these options.



### STEP BY STEP STARTUP

If you are completely unfamiliar with how to startup, these steps can be very useful. Once you click Step by Step Startup, you get the first dialog box that tells you to choose the communication type. There is a red line going to where you make that choice on this screen.



Once you choose the type of communication, the second step is displayed. As you can see, these steps make startup very easy for the user.

## **IP POOL EDIT FOR ETHERNET**

This is where you will set up the IP Address and subnet mask when using the SERVOSTAR SC controller.

### SC REFERENCE MANUAL

Clicking this option displays the SERVOSTAR SC Reference Manual in PDF format.

#### SC USER'S MANUAL

Clicking this option displays the SERVOSTAR SC User's Manual in PDF format.

### SC INSTALL MANUAL

Clicking this option displays the SERVOSTAR SC Installation Manual in PDF format.

### MOTION SUITE HELP

Clicking this option displays the Help file for MotionSuite. It covers information about Motor Selection & Drive Tuning (**MOTIONLINK**) as well as Program Development (BASIC Moves Development Studio).

#### ABOUT MOTIONSUITE

Clicking this option displays the version number and copyright information.



If you click System Info...., you can see the information about the system.

💁 Microsoft System Inform	ation		
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew <u>T</u> est <u>H</u> elp			
🖬 🖨 🗊 🗎 !	<u>*?</u> × >		
System Info	Item	Value	
- System	Operating System:	Windows 95	
- Printing	Windows version:	4.10	
System DLL's	Processor:	Pentium	
	Total physical memory:	261584 KB	
	Available physical memory:	5352 KB*	
🕀 Graphic Filters	CDL memory available:	58% 50%	
	Swap file size:	30% 233472 KB	
Display	Swap file usage:	19%	
Electropic	Swap file setting:	Dynamic	
E Video	Available space on drive C:	2096832 KB	
	Windows directory:	C:\WINDOWS	
Applications Running	TEMP directory:	C:\WINDOWS\TEMP	
Applications Furning			
the office Markelan	* See "Memory" in Help Index		
Active Modules	I		
Select a category to display the	associated items		11.

Close this window to return to the About MotionSuite window. Click OK to return to the main MotionSuite window.

## MotionSuite and Ethernet Communication

Be sure you are connected to the Ethernet port (C6 on the SERVOSTAR SC). Open Motion Sute installed on your PC. You will see the Welcome screen.



1. Click the Ethernet radio button.

🖞 MotionSuite		
Step by Step Startup	ROLLMORGEN Char Motion Shite	ose to change the nection state : O Offline O Serial
	Double click a line to select a device	E thomas
IP Pool Edit	IP Controller Name SerialNumber	
FULETHEL	10.1.101.15 SC Trainer4 S01A-1304	Current
SC Reference Manual		State: Offline
SC User's Manual		
SC Install Manual		
Motion Suite Help		
About MotionSuite	Motor Selection & Drive Tuning Program Development	

2. MotionSuite searches for controllers and if found, displays the name in white with a black background. Doubleclick the controller name.



3. The screen will now show the Current state: Connected Ethernet. You can now select the motor and tune the drive by clicking Motor Selection & Drive Tuning (**MOTIONLINK**). You can also develop programs by clicking Program Development (BASIC Moves Development Studio).

## MotionSuite and Serial Communication

Be sure you are connected to the serial port (C7 on the SERVOSTAR SC). Open Motion Sute installed on your PC. You will see the Welcome screen.



Whether you are Offline or connected, you can access the options on the left-side of this screen. The first option is Step-by-Step Startup.

1. Click the Serial radio button.



- 2. Click SC Connection on the left side of this screen.
- 3. Click Connect!

🛃 Connect To		? ×
<b>во к</b> м	TG Local	
<u>U</u> ser name:	username	
	∥ <u> ∏</u> <u>S</u> ave password	
Phone <u>n</u> umber:	6335860	
Dialing <u>f</u> rom:	New Location	Dial Properties
	Connect	Cancel

4. A dialog box comes up to tell you that your Serial connection is established. Click OK.

WotionSuite		
Step by Step Startup	ROLLMORGEN Contraction Character Contraction Shite	oose to change the nection state : O Offline O Serial
	Double click a line to select a device	
IP Pool Edit	IP Controller Name SerialNumbe	r
For ethernet	Serial	Current state:
SC Reference Manual		
SC User's Manual		
SC Install Manual		
Motion Suite Help		
About MotionSuite	Motor Selection & Drive Tuning Program Development	

5. The main MotionSuite screen now displays Serial in white text with a black background. Doubleclick on this.



6. Now, the screen shows the Current State to be Connected Serial (slip). You are connected to the controller and communicating. You can select Program Development (BASIC Moves) to begin programming or Motor Selection & Drive Tuning (**MOTIONLINK**) to configure your drive.

# **MOTIONLINK Startup Wizard**

The **MOTIONLINK** Startup Wizard is accessed either directly through **MOTIONLINK** or through MotionSuite once communication with the controller is established following the steps outlined above.



1. Click Start. A dialog box is displayed describing the Drive Configuration settings required.

New Amplifier Startup 🛛 🔀
Drive Configuration:
Verify that the information shown on this Drive Configuration screen is correct. Change the value of the Bus Voltage if required, and make sure the DIP switch is set correctly.
You can call up Windows help for this screen by pressing F1.
When you're done on this screen, click 'Close' and the New Amplifier Startup routine will continue.
[OK]

2. Read the entire text. When finished, click OK.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Drive Configuration	
Bus Voltage	DIP Switch DRIVE CONFIGURATION SWITCH (Top View) Address 0 Address 1 Address 2 Address 3 Address 4 Bypass config file Normal
Amplifier: Kollmorgen SERVOSTAR Feedback Type: Resolver Amplifier Firmware Version Number: 2.0.4 Controller: Kollmorgen SERVOSTAR SC SERVOSTAR SC Firmware Version Number: SSSC 2.0.4-C2	Amplifier Serial Number Serial No. 01A-1304 Axis Disable © Enable Close

- 3. Set the Bus Voltage.
- 4. Verify the DIP switch settings and update if changes are made.
- 5. Verify the Serial Number.
- 6. Enable the Axis.
- 7. Save.
- 8. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK New Amplifier Startup	
123	
Drive Motor Feedback Opmode Tune Backup GO	
Click 'Next' to go to the next step or Click 'Exit' to go to the Main MOTIONLINK screen.	
Next Help	
	Exit

9. Click Next.

New Amplifier Setup 🔣
Motor Configuration Settings:
Use this screen to verify that the proper motor parameters are stored in the drive. Click the From Drive button to download motor parameters from the drive for viewing. If the parameters are not stored in the drive, or they need to be changed, call up Windows help for this screen by pressing F1. Directions for using this screen to access the Motor Database and to transmit motor parameters to the drive are contained in the help file.
When you're done on this screen, click 'Close' and the New Amplifier Startup routine will continue.
[OK]

10. A dialog box displays describing the next screen. When you have finished reading the contents, click OK.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Motor Configuration					_ [	۱×
	Г	Motor Parameters-				K
Motor Family:		Mater Tura			-	otor
Kollmorgen 6SM-Series		Motor Type			-	D
6SM		Real: Current			-	tab
Motor Description:		Cont Current		amps	-	ase
		Loni. Current		amps	-	
Pick your motor		Max Speed		rpm	-	
		Back EMF		Vrms/1000 rpm	-1	
	1	BEMF Lomp%		percent	-11	
Note: If the feedback device parameters below do not match your motor then click the "TO USER DEFINED" button and create a custom User Defined motor with the correct feedback data.		Rotor Inertia		kg-m 2	-	
		Min Inductance		millihenries	-	
		Motor Poles		mag.poles	-	
n h Normala Nulla		AGain at Peak I		percent	-	
Hesolver Lincoder Halls		AGain at Cont I		percent		Ιë
		AGain at Zero I		percent		
		Torque Adv P		elec, degrees		l a
		Torque Adv C		elec, degrees		L
# Poles Phase		Speed Adv at V		elec, degrees		L
		Speed Adv 1/2 V		elec, degrees		L
	L					L
			USER			
Present Drive Type Presently Loaded Motor SR03 @160 volts MTX1502A1	_	1			C	lose

11. Configure the motor. Verify all settings. Save any changes. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.
| SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK New Amplifier Startup        |      |
|---|------|
|   |      |
| 123   |      |
| Drive Motor Feedback Opmode Tune Backup           |      |
| Click 'Next' to go to the next step or            |      |
| Click 'Exit' to go to the Main MOTIONLINK screen. |      |
| Next  |      |
| T Don't Show Next Time Help                       |      |
|   | Exit |

12. Click Next.

New Amplifier Startup
Feedback Configuration:
Verify that the information shown on this Feedback Device screen is correct. Most of the information displayed on this screen was downloaded during the Motor Configuration portion of New Amplifier Startup, and should be correct.
To automatically check your motor leads, feedback wiring, and feedback configuration, click the Auto-Config tab to execute the SERVOSTAR's Auto-Config function.
You can call up Windows help for this screen by pressing F1.
When you're done on this screen, click 'Close' and the New Amplifier Startup routine will continue.
[OK]

13. Be sure you read the information required for the Feedback Configuration. When finished, click OK.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Feedback Device	
Resolver Zero          Resolver Zero         RESOLVER ZERO ALIGNMENT CHECK DIRECTIONS         Not applicable to this Sercos system.	Resolver Display
Resolution 14 bits 2	Position Feedback 0

14. Make any changes that are required. Save your changes. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK New Amplifier Startup	
123	
Drive Motor Feedback Opmode Tune Backup	
Click 'Next' to go to the next step or Click 'Exit' to go to the Main MOTIONLINK screen.	
Next Time Help	
	Exit

15. Click Next.

New Amplifier Startup 🛛 🔀
Operation Mode Configuration:
Use this screen to select the operation mode of the drive.
You can call up Windows help for this screen by pressing F1.
When you're done on this screen, click 'Close' and the New Amplifier Startup routine will continue.
(OK)

16. Read the Operation Mode Configuration dialog box. When finished, click OK.

SERV	OSTAR MOTIONLINK Operation Mode Configuration	
	Operation Mode	
		Close
		0000

17. Here, you can change to Digital Velocity, Digital Position, or Analog Velocity. Save your changes. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK New Amplifier Startup	
1 2 3	
Drive Motor Feedback Opmode Tune Backup	
Click 'Next' to go to the next step or	
Click 'Exit' to go to the Main MOTIONLINK screen.	
Next	
Don't Show Next Time Help	
	Exit

18. Click Next.

New Amplifier Startup
Tune the Drive:
Use this screen to plot the drive's response to a command input and to tune the control loops.
You can call up Windows help for this screen by pressing F1.
When you're done on this screen, click 'Close' and the New Amplifier Startup routine will continue.
(OK)

19. Read the dialog box for Tuning the Drive. When finished, click OK.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK PC Scope	
🕞 🖬 🕸 💹 🛨 💻 🛨 🚓 🌒 🕼 🖹 🖹 🔛 🗮 🔊 🕿 🛣	Enlarge Plot
100.00	🔽 Show Buttons
90.00 -	Move, Becord
80.00 -	and Plot
70.00 -	Bas Basdy 📾
50.00 -	Recording
40.00 -	Rec. Done 🔘
30.00 -	Record Cancel
20.00 -	Record
0.00	Move Stop
1	Play Scale
Setup Record Setup Motion Vel. Gains Posn. Gains Filters Auto Iune	Save/Print
Sample Rate # Samples Total Time	)ir. Trig. Level
.001 Sec x 256 V = 0.256	• >
	Stop Motion
	After Record
Scaling Axis Axis Disable © Ena	ble STOP Close

20. In the Setup <u>R</u>ecord Tab, verify the settings. Enter the Sample Rate and number of Samples.

- 21. Select the Trigger Mode.
- 22. Select the Pre-Trigger Position.
- 23. Select the Channels.
- 24. Click the Setup <u>Motion tab.</u>

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK PC Scope	
🖆 🖬 🛎 😹 🛃 🔛 🛨 🖨 🗣 🕼 🖻 🗄 📖 🗮 🖬 😰 🔭 🛣	Enlarge Plot
100.00 -	👿 Show Buttons
90.00 -	Move Record
80.00 -	and Plot
70.00 -	
60.00 ·	Rec. Ready 🔍
40.00 -	Rec. Done 🔍
30.00 -	Cancel
20.00 -	Record Record
10.00 -	Move Stop
0.00	Play Scale
Setup <u>R</u> ecord <u>Setup Motion</u> <u>Vel. Gains</u> <u>Posn. Gains</u> <u>Filters</u> Auto <u>T</u> une	<u>Save/Print</u>
Command Type	th Factor
	mooth factor
	Dec
	00 350000
STOP YZ STEP RPM/	sec RPM/sec
✓ Auto Up Dwn Max 100 Min 0 O Disable ☉ Enab	ole STOP Close

25. Select if you wish the command to Jog, Step, or Move.

- 26. Set the Smooth factor.
- 27. Click the <u>V</u>el. Gains tab.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK PC Scope	
🖆 🖬 🕸 💹 🛨 💻 🛨 🚧 🕑 🔃 🖹 🗎 🛄 🗮 🔛 🛣 🌋	Enlarge Plot
	👿 Show Buttons
90.00 -	Move Becord
80.00 -	and Plot
70.00 -	Dec Dec de 📾
50.00 -	Rec. Ready 👼 Recording 🏽
40.00 -	Rec. Done 🔘
30.00 -	Becord Cancel
20.00 -	Record Record
10.00 -	Move Stop
1	Play Scale
Setup Record Setup Motion Vel. Gains Posn. Gains Filters Auto Iune	<u>Save/Print</u>
Active Control Loop	
PDFF Control	Velocity Feedback Low Pass Filter
PDFF Loop Gain PDFF Loop Integral Feedforward Ratio	€ Off C On
Scaling Axis Axis O Disable O Enat	ble <b>STOP</b> Close

- 28. Select the Active Control Loop.
- 29. Set the PDFF Loop Gain.
- 30. Set the PDFF Loop Integral.
- 31. Select the Feedforward Ratio.
- 32. Determine if Velocity Feedback Low Pass Filter is Off or On.
- 33. Click the <u>P</u>osn. Gains tab.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK PC Scope	
🖆 🖬 🚳 💹 🛨 💻 🛨 🚓 🌒 🕑 🔃 🖹 🗎 🛄 🗮 🔊 🍞 🖾	Enlarge Plot
100.00	Mage Show Buttons
90.00 -	Move, Record,
80.00 -	and Plot
70.00 - 60.00 -	Bee Beedu
50.00 -	Recording
40.00 -	Rec. Done 🏾 🖲
30.00 -	Becord Cancel
20.00 -	Record
10.00	Move Stop
1	Play Scale
Setup <u>R</u> ecord Setup <u>M</u> otion Vel. Gains Posn. Gains <u>F</u> ilters Auto <u>I</u> une	<u>Save/Print</u>
Derivative Gain Proportional Gain Acc. Feedforward #1	
0 800 200	
Integral Gain     Vel. Feedforward Ratio     Acc. Feedforward #2	_
Scaling Axis Axis C Disable © Enat	ole <b>STOP</b> Close

- 34. Set the Derivative Gain.
- 35. Set the Proportional Gain.
- 36. Set the Acceleration Feedforward #1.
- 37. Set the Integral Gain.
- 38. Set the Velocity Feedforward Ratio.
- 39. Set the Acceleration Feedforward #2.
- 40. Click the <u>F</u>ilters tab.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK PC Scope					
😂 🖬 🕸 🕹 🗹 ± 🔳 ± 6	<b>&gt;●♥♥</b> 🗟 🖻		bi 🔊 T 🖾	Enlarg	ge Plot
100.00 -				💌 Show	Buttons
90.00 -				Move, I	Record.
80.00 -				and	Plot
60.00 -				Bec B	eadu 🗃
50.00 -				Reco	ording 🔍
40.00 -				Rec.	Done 🔘
30.00 -				Record	Cancel
10.00 -				Move	Stop
0.00				MOVE	
	1			Play	Scale
Setup <u>R</u> ecord Setup <u>M</u> otion <u>V</u> el. Gains	Posn. Gains	Eilters	Auto <u>T</u> une	) <u>S</u> ave/	'Print )
Filter Mode	First Low Pass Fil	ter (Hz)	Second Low Pass	Filter (Hz)—	
no filter	500		500		
C one first order low pass filter					
C two first order low pass filters	Notch Filter Lente	er Freq. (Hz)	Notch Filter Bandw	iidth (Hz)—	
C notch filter	1	Þ	1	Þ	
Scaling			Axis		
Auto Up Dwn Max 100	Min  0		O Disable 💿 Enat		Close

41. Select the Filter Mode.

42. Set the First Low Pass Filter (Hz).

43. Set the Second Low Pass Filter (Hz).

44. Set the Notch Filter Center Freq. (Hz).

45. Set the Notch Filter Bandwidth (Hz).

46. Click the Auto <u>T</u>une tab.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK PC Scope	
🖆 🖬 🕸 💹 🛨 💻 🛨 🚧 🕑 🖪 🖹 🖽 🗮 🔊 🕿 🛣	Enlarge Plot
100.00	👿 Show Buttons
90.00 -	Move, Record,
80.00 -	and Plot
70.00 - 60.00 -	Bee Beedu 🗃
50.00 -	Recording
40.00 -	Rec. Done 🔘
30.00 -	Becord Cancel
20.00 -	Record
0.00	Move Stop
1	Play Scale
Setup <u>R</u> ecord Setup <u>Motion</u> Vel. Gains <u>Posn.</u> Gains <u>Filters</u> <u>Auto Tune</u>	Save/Print
Tune Bandwidth       Tune Direction         50 <ul> <li>Bidirectional</li> <li>CW only</li> <li>CCW only</li> </ul> 350	Auto Tune
Scaling Axis Axis O Disable O Enal	ble <b>STOP</b> Close

47. Set the Tune Bandwidth.

48. Set the Tune Direction.

49. Set the Tune Speed (RPM).

50. Click the <u>Save/Print</u> tab.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK PC Scope	
	Enlarge Plot
	Mage Show Buttons
90.00 -	Have Bread
80.00 -	and Plot
70.00 -	
60.00 -	Rec. Ready 🕘
50.00 -	Recording 🔍
40.00 -	Rec. Done 👳
30.00 -	Record Cancel
10.00 -	Maria Chan
0.00	
1	Play Scale
Setup <u>R</u> ecord ) Setup <u>M</u> otion ) ⊻el. Gains ) <u>P</u> osn. Gains ) <u>F</u> ilters ) Auto <u>I</u> une	] Save/Print
Load & Save Graph Data to a Comma-Separated-Variable File Load Plot Save Plot	
Scaling Axis Axis O Disable O Enat	ole <b>STOP</b> Close
51. Load the Plot.	
52. Save the Plot.	

- 53. Save the Variables.
- 54. Print.
- 55. Click Close to return to the main Wizard screen.

New Amp	olifier Startup
⚠	Click 'OK' if you want the drive to have this configuration on the next powerup. (This will save all your settings to the EEPROM in the drive.)
	Click 'Cancel' if you don't want the drive to use this configuration on the next powerup.
	OK Cancel

56. You are prompted to save the configuration settings. If you click OK, these settings will be available on the next powerup. If you click Cancel, these settings are not saved.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK New Amplifier Startup	
123	
Drive Motor Feedback Opmode Tune Backup GO	
Click 'Next' to go to the next step or	
Click 'Exit' to go to the Main MOTIONLINK screen.	
Next	
Don't Show Next Time	Exit
7. Click Next.	
Click 'OK' to backup your drive's configuration to disk. Click 'Cancel' if you don't want to backup.	

58. You are prompted to backup your drive's configuration to disk. Click OK to proceed. Click Cancel if you do NOT want to backup.

Cancel

ΟK

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK New Amplifier Startup	
123	
Drive Motor Feedback Opmode Tune Backup	
You have finished setting up this SERVOSTAR axis. You can go back to any setup screen by clicking	
Click 'Exit' or 'Go' to go to the Main MOTIONLINK screen.	
Finished!	
T Don't Show Next Time Help	
	Exit

59. You are finished configuring the drive. Click Exit or GO to go to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

# Main MOTIONLINK Screen

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK	
<u>File Edit View Configure Tune Options H</u> elp	
E E E ConMode 2 -	No Comm Faults
SR03@160 volts	MTX1502A1
Operation Mode Digital Position	
Analog Input	
← Command Position Velocity Current	
teedback والمحافظ المحافظ المحاف	
C↔ System C↔ 1/D A1 (SC SC Trainer4) Set	Set Motor
KOLLMORGEN         Motion         Axis           C Disable         C Disable         C Disable	Enable     Exit

In viewing the top toolbar of this screen, you can see you can reach the same areas that are discussed in the Wizard screen.

### **Command Generator**

By clicking on the Command Generator button, you can edit Moves, Homing, and Accel/Decel Settings.

🔼 SERVOSTAR MOTIONLI	NK Command Generator	
Moves	Homing	
Absolute Move Target Position 0 Move Velocity 500 0 Incremental Move E55350 Move Velocity 500	Counts Move Absolute RPM Stop	Notor Shaft Position Motor Shaft Position Position Feedback In Position · · · Stopped · Is Settled · ''In Position'' Threshold 100 Counts
Calc		sable © Enable O Disable © Enable Close

The Moves tab is shown first. Here, you can set the Target Position and Move Velocity. You can set the Incremental Move Distance and Move Velocity. You can view the Status and Position. You can set the "In Position" Threshold.

🔼 SERVOSTAR MO	TIONLINK Command Generator	
Moves	) (Homing	Accel/Decel Settings
Homing Homing Ve 1000	elocity RPM Stop	Status and Configuration  Motor Shaft Position  60360  Position Feedback  Homing Status
Type 0: Homing     C. Type 1: Homing	with home switch and marker	In Position O Stopped O Is Settled O
<ul> <li>Type 1: Honing</li> <li>Type 2: Homing</li> <li>Type 3: Present</li> <li>Type 4: Home o</li> <li>Type 5: Home o</li> <li>Type 5: Home o</li> <li>Type 6: Same a</li> <li>Type 7: Same a</li> </ul>	with marker only position is defined as home in marker option 1 in marker option 2 is Type 0, but searches for home every time is Type 1, but searches for home every time	IN1 Function CW Limit Switch IN2 Function CCW Limit Switch IN3 Function Home Switch
	Linear Calculate	n Axis sable © Enable © Disable © Enable Close

In the Homing tab, you can set the Homing Velocity and Type. You can set IN1, IN2, and IN3 functions.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Command General	tor 📃 🗆 🗙
Moves <u>H</u> oming	
Acceleration	Active Disable Settings  Active Fault Mode (When a fault occurs:)  Disable Immediately  Follow Active Disable Procedure  Active Disable Deceleration Rate  5.000000 RPM/msec
Deceleration 400000 RPM/sec Default	1     32767     Default       Active Disable Speed Threshold
	Motion Axis
	C Disable C Disable C Enable

In the Accel/Decel Settings tab, you can set the Acceleration, Deceleration, Active Disable Deceleration Rate, Active Disable Speed Threshold, and Active Disable Delay Time. Save your settings. Click Close.

### Position

When you click the Position button, you can edit the Position Loop and Position Limit Settings.



The Position Loop allows you to set the Vel Feedforward, Acc. Feedforward #1, Acc. Feedforward #2, Derivitave Gain, Proportional Gain, Integral Gain, Input Limiter, and Output Limiter. Save your changes.

Clicking Close returns you to the Main MOTIONLINK screen.

🙁 SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Position Loop and Limits	_ 🗆 🗵
Position Limits Position Loop	Ì
Hardware Travel Limits       Limit Sw Status         Limit Sw Status       Limit Sw Function         CW Limit Sw ON       C Enabled         CCW Limit Sw ON       C Enabled         CCW Limit Sw ON       O Disabled         Image: Status       Image: Status         CCW Limit Sw ON       Image: Status         Image: Status       Image: Status         CCW Limit Sw ON       Image: Status         Image: Status       Image: Status <t< td=""><td></td></t<>	
Software Position Limits         Position Limit Values         Min. Position       -1.79768999999997e+308         Default       Enabled         Max. Position       1.79768999999997e+308         Default       Enabled	
Position Error Settings         "In Position" Threshold         [1.00000000000 Counts         0       32767         In Position       0         In Position       1000000         In Position       10000000         In Position       1000000000	
Axis C Disable © Enable	Close

The Position Limits allows you to set the Limit Sw Function, Travel Limit Decel Rate, Travel Direction Sense, Position Limit Values, and Position Error Settings. Save your settings. Clicking Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

### Velocity

When you click the Velocity button, you can edit the Velocity Loop and Settings.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLIN	IK Velocity Loop and Limits		
Velocity Limits Std. Pole Placement	PI Control Advanced Pole Placement	PDFF Control	
Accel Velocity Limit Limit	Load Inertia Ratio (%) 100 Tracking Factor 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 10	dth (Hz)	t nd
Selected Model C Low Frequency C High Frequency		Low Pass Filter	
		Axis O Disable O Enable	Close

The <u>Std.</u> Pole Placement tab allows you to set the Load Inertia Ratio (%), Bandwidth (Hz), and Tracking Factor. You can also turn the Low Pass Filter off or on and select Low or High Frequency. Save any changes made. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

SERVOSTAR MOTION	ILINK Velocity Loop and Limits	
Std. Pole Placement	Advanced Pole Placement	) <u>F</u> ilters ) P <u>D</u> FF Control
	System Velocity Limits VBUSx707 / MBEMF MSPEED System Max 9427 6000 12000 VMAX 6000 RPM	Encoder Max 49,152,000 / MENCRES 12000
Overspeed Limit		elocity Override
10 7199 User Velocity Limit 6000 RPM 10 6000	Default	Default Note: Setting this to a value less than VMAX will result in better system performance.
		Axis C Disable C Enable

The <u>V</u>elocity Limits tab allows you to set the Overspeed Limit, User Velocity Limit, and Velocity Override. It also allows you to view MBEMF, MSPEED, System Max, Encoder Max, and VMAX. Be sure to save any changes made. Clicking Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

SERVOSTAR MOTION	LINK Velocity Loop and Limits		
Std. Pole Placement	Advanced Pole Placement     PI Control	PDFF Control	
Accel Velocity Limit Limit	Velocity Integrator	Σ Velocity Gain 1382	Current Command
	Low Pass Filter © Off © On		Velocity Feedback
		Axis © Disable © Enable	

The PI Control tab allows you to set the Velocity Integrator and Velocity Gain. You can also turn the Low Pass Filter off or on. Save any changes made. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.



The PDFF Control tab allows you to set the Feedforward Ratio, Velocity Integrator, and Velocity Gain. You can also turn the Low Pass Filter off or on. Save any changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK	Velocity Loop and Limits		
Velocity Limits Std. Pole Placement	) PI Control	PDFF Control Eilters	
Accel Velocity Limit Limit VR-	τ τ τ τ τ τ τ τ τ τ τ τ τ τ	VF	Current Command
VFI-			Velocity Feedback
Load from Drive		Ser	d Design
		Axis © Disable © Enable	

The <u>A</u>dvanced Pole Placement tab allows you to load the design from the drive or enter values for the CONCAD frequency analysis system and send it to the drive. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

👻 SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Vel	ocity Loop and Limits		_ 🗆 🗵
<u>V</u> elocity Limits <u>S</u> td. Pole Placement	} PI Control } Advanced Pole Placement	PDFF Control	
Filter Mode filter for no filter for one first order low pass filters for two first order low pass filters for notch filter	First Low Pass Filter 500 Hz Notch Filter Center Freq. 500 Hz	Second Low Pass Filter 500 Hz Notch Filter Bandwidth 1 Hz	
		Axis © Disable © Enable STO	Close

The <u>F</u>ilters tab allows you to select no filter, one first order low pass filter, two first order low pass filters, or a notch filter. If you select one or two first order low pass filters, you can also set the frequency for the filter(s). If you select notch filter, you can set the Notch Filter Center Freq. And Notch Filter Bandwidth. Save any changes made. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

### Current

When you click the Current button, you can edit the Current Loop and Settings.



On the <u>C</u>urrent Limits tab, you can set the Application Continuous current, Application Peak current, User Limits, Drive and Motor Peak and Continuous currents, as well as set the Drive Foldback. Save your changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.



The Current <u>L</u>oop tab allows you to set the Gravity Constant and Coulomb Friction Constant. Save your changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

### **Resolver Feedback**

The Resolver Feedback button displays the information on the feedback device.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Feedback Device		
Resolver Zero RESOLVER ZERO ALIGNMENT CHECK DIRECTIONS Not applicable to this Sercos system.	Resolver Display 60 90 120 30 150 0 180 0 180 0 210 300 240 270 240	
Resolution 14 bits 2	Resolver Position 60372 Position Feedback 6	
	Axis © Disable © Enable Close	

Be sure to save any changes you make. Close returns you to the Main MOTIONLINK screen.

### Set Motor

The Set Motor button allows you to view and edit the motor properties.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK Motor Configuration			
	Motor Parameters —		ı (K
Motor Family:	Makes Turne		otor
Kollmorgen 6SM-Series	Motor Type		D
IGSM 🗾	Baak Current		tab
Motor Description:	Feak Current	amps	ase
	Lont. Current	amps	
Pick your motor	Max Speed	rpm	
	DEME Come®	vrms/1000 rpm	
	BEMF Comp&	percent	
Note: If the feedback device parameters below do not match	Rotor Inertia	Kg-m 2	
create a custom User Defined motor with the correct	Min Inductance	millinenries	
eedback data.	Motor Poles	mag.poles	ЦF
Develop Halls	Alian at Peak I	percent	
	AGain at Cont I	percent	118
	AGain at Zero I	percent	
	Torque Adv P	elec. degrees	-   q
	Torque Adv C	elec, degrees	
#Poles Phase	Speed Adv at V	elec. degrees	
	Speed Adv 1/2 V	elec. degrees	
Present Drive Type Presently Loaded Motor SR03 @160 volts MTX1502A1			Close

This screen allows you to select the Motor Family, add a Motor Description, choose the feedback type, or create a custom User Defined motor with the correct feedback type. Be sure to save all changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

### System I/O

The System I/O button allows you access to the Drive I/O settings, Thermostat, and Travel Limits.

SERVOSTAR MOTIONLINK 1/0		
Drive 1/0	<u>I</u> hermostat	Travel Limits
Digital Inputs IN1 CW Limit Switch IN2 CCW Limit Switch IN3 Home Switch Digital Output 01 Disabled		7.202 V       -       SHIELD         7.202 V       -       ANALOG IN1+         ANALOG IN1-       COMMON         Config       BELAY OUT         Config       +24V INPUT         OFF       IN1         OFF       IN1         OFF       IN1         OFF       O1         Off       01
On Connec	tor C9 In_Common_0T03 Sys.Din.1	5.808 V
Oisplay Update Continuous C Manual Updat		Axis Close Close Close

The <u>D</u>rive I/O tab allows you to set IN1, IN2, IN3, and 01. Save your changes. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

E SERVOSTAR MO	TIONLINK 1/0		- 🗆 ×
<u>D</u> rive I/0	) ( <u>T</u> hermostat	Travel Limits	Ì
	Thermostat Mode Thermost When Thermostat Goes from Of Disable Drive Disable Drive After 2 Minute No Disable, Open Fault Rela Disable, Open Fault Rela State Warning; No Other Ac State Warning; After Delay T	tat State Off f to ON s ay tion fime Elapses, Open Fault Relay	
Thermostat Fa	ult Delay Time Seconds 300	<ul> <li>Thermostat Type</li> <li>PTC (Positive Temp. Coefficient)</li> <li>NTC (Negative Temp. Coefficient)</li> </ul>	
		Axis © Disable © Enable	Close

The <u>Thermostat</u> tab allows you to set the Thermostat Mode, Thermostat Fault Delay Time, and Thermostat Type. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

E SERVOSTAR MOTIO	NLINK I/O	Travel Limits
Travel Limit Swite CW L CCW L Travel Limit Fund	ches imit Switch ON imit Switch ON	Maximum Position Error         1000000       Counts         0       2147483647
Position Commar ©	nd Travel Direction Sense + Motion is CW + Motion is CCW	1000 32767000 Default
		Axis Close Close

The Travel Limits tab allows you to set the Travel Limit Switches, Maximum Position Error, enable or disable the Travel Limit Function, set the Active Disable Deceleration Rate, and Position Command Travel Direction Sense. Close returns you to the Main **MOTIONLINK** screen.

Click Exit to exit out of **MOTIONLINK**.

# **APPENDIX C**

# **Differential Input**

For many applications, simple pulse and direction stepper motor controllers are matched up with SERVOSTAR amplifiers. The positioning capability of the SERVOSTAR makes this a very desirable approach to controlling motion with standard low-cost controllers. One particular challenge is the compatibility between the pulse and direction output and the encoder equivalent input on the SERVOSTAR.

The SERVOSTAR, for noise immunity purposes, uses a differential line receiver for the pulse input from the controller. Whereas many step motor controllers have available a single-ended output. This is not a direct "connect the wires and off you go" issue. There are a few different methods to establish connectivity between the two servo devices.

One method is to utilize biasing resistors on the inverting input to the line receiver. This is to ensure that the output of the device will switch according to the desired input from the controller. Usually, two biasing resistors of 300 Ohms are used, which get connected to +5V and ground (illustrated below).



This method works, but is prone to noise and the values of the resistors could change (depending on the cable length). The input must be biased at a proper level for the non-inverting input to change states of the output. The more desirable the method (a more robust solution) is to utilize a compatible line driver chip (illustrated below).



This way, the input received from the driver chip is ensured to be compatible with the SERVOSTAR. This chip is the 75172, which is the companion to the line receiver (75LS173) on the input to the SERVOSTAR. The connection here is the C8 input located on the top of the SERVOSTAR and has a 9-pin "D" shell connector. This is a typical interface to achieve a noise immune connection of a single-ended output to a differential input on the SERVOSTAR.

# APPENDIX D

## **Local Variable Memory Management**

### Stack Overflow

You get this error message when incrementing the Interpreter's stack pointer more then 4995 times. For example: for 4996 declarations of local long-type variables. The size of this stack (for a program) is 5000 (a macro) \* 8 (the size of of the stack\_element union). If the Interpreter's stack pointer is incremented more then 4995 times, the Interpreter kills the task.

## Function Stack Overflow

The initial amount of nesting allowed for recursive functions is 40 (a macro). The initial size of the function stack is 40 \* 112 (the size of of the t\_register\_block structure). The nesting counter is incremented for each function call. Each time the value of this counter exceeds the nesting limit, the Interpreter attempts to double the size of the memory allocated for the function stack. The nesting counter is also doubled. This reallocation process continues until the new memory size is greater than 10 percent of the largest free memory block. When it is greater than 10 percent, the Interpreter kills the task. The maximum value of the nesting counter may exceed the stack overflow limit.

In summery, for recursive calling of functions with local variables, you may reach the stack pointer overflow limit (4995 times) before you reach the maximum nesting available.

## Local Variables Include

- DIM <variable\_name> as <variable\_type>
- Parameters ("by value" and "by reference").
- Returned values of functions.

# Local Variable Storage in the Translator

Each time the Translator enters a block of a program, function, or subroutine, a local symbol table is created for this block. Each time the Translator leaves a block, it deletes the block's local symbol table.

Names, offsets, and other data (number of dimensions, robot-types, etc.) for local variables are stored in the local symbol tables.

Local symbol tables of functions and subroutines also contain special characteristics of parameters passed "by reference" and of returned values of functions.

## **Declared Variables (DIM)**

During local variables declarations, each variable is given an offset (beginning from zero), that is stored in the local symbol table. Each double-type variable gets 8 bytes, whereas other types of variables each get 4 bytes. The Translator passes these offsets to the Interpreter. The Translator calculates the total number of local variable bytes, and passes this value to the Interpreter. Each time a new block is entered, the Interpreter saves the current value of the Interpreter's main stack pointer as the "frame pointer" and moves the stack pointer by the total number of local variable bytes. This creates a memory segment for storage of local variable values. The Interpreter fills this segment with zeros and/or addresses, according to the offsets of the block's local variables.

## Parameters

During parameters declarations (at the prototype of the function or subroutine), each parameter is given an offset (beginning from zero), that is stored in the local symbol table. For parameters, all variable types get 8 bytes each and the Translator passes these offsets to the Interpreter. The Translator calculates the total number of parameters and passes this value to the Interpreter. First, parameter values (for "by value" parameters), or offsets (for "by reference" parameters), are pushed into the stack. In order to include the previously pushed parameters, the Interpreter moves the "frame pointer" (see section 2) by the total number of parameter bytes when the parameters values and offsets are called from a function or subroutine block. This way, the Interpreter creates a memory segment for parameters between the "frame pointer" and the stack pointer.

## **Returned Values**

A returned value of a function is handled as another "by value" parameter. Its offset is always zero, and its value is also stored in 8 bytes. First, a "zero" value (a decimal zero, an empty string, a zeroed point or structure) is pushed to the stack. The Interpreter includes the 8 bytes of returned value when moving the "frame pointer" within a function or subroutine block.
## **Exiting a Block**

When exiting a block, the memory allocated for local variables (strings, points, structures) is released. For program and subroutine blocks, the stack pointer receives the value of the frame pointer and empties the memory segment created for parameters and local variables.



When leaving a function block, moving the stack pointer leaves an 8-byte segment between the frame pointer and the stack pointer (offset zero). This segment stores the returned-value.

